

## Setting the Neuropointer

Default setting | Pointer: ON | Focus: Follow

To increase the usability of the pointer (Blue / White) operated with the Neuropointer key ( ), you can change its operational setting such as the display ON/OFF, the focus setting and its moving speed.

You can set the following items:

Item	Description	See page	
Pointer	Sets whether to display the pointer or not (ON/OFF). If "OFF" is set, no pointer appears even if you slide ( ).	below	
Focus	Sets the pointer operation whether to select an item automatically in accordance with its movement or not (Follow: (Blue)/Nonfollow: (White)). If "Follow: (Blue)" is set, an item under the pointer is automatically selected so that you can select the item by simply pressing ( ). If "Nonfollow: (White)" is set, move the pointer over the item you want to select and press ( ) to highlight the item, and then press ( ) again to select it.	below	
Speed	Standard	Adjusts the pointer speed for standard screens such as the list screen and icon selection screen.	p.250
	MainMenu	Adjusts the pointer speed for the main menu.	
	T9/Prediction	Adjusts the pointer speed for the T9 (Mode 3) reading candidate screen and prediction screen.	
	Software	Adjusts the pointer speed for screens during activating "cppl".	
	Reset	Resets the pointer speed to the default setting.	
Slide	Adjust	Adjusts the maximum slide range of the Neuropointer key to move the pointer properly.	p.251
	Reset	Resets the slide adjustment value to the default setting.	

※ : Depending on the k-lookup software, this setting may not be effective.

● You can use the pointer on the screens with " " displayed.

## 1 Select (Menu) ► (Other settings) ► "Neuropointer".

To set the display

Select "Pointer".

Set whether to display the pointer or not (ON/OFF).

To set the focus

Select "Focus".

Select the pointer's focus type from "Follow"/"nonfollow".

To adjust the speed

Select "Speed".

To adjust the slide range

Select "Slide".

● Even if "Pointer" is set to "OFF", " " is displayed on the bottom of the screen on which the pointer is available.

## Adjusting the pointer speed

You can adjust the pointer speed as you like. If you use the pointer to adjust the speed, the value being adjusted is reflected to the pointer. Therefore you can adjust the speed while checking it.

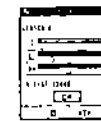
● To adjust the pointer speed correctly, adjust in the order of ① Initial speed, ② Low speed area\* and ③ High speed area\*.

## 1 Select "Speed" on the Neuropointer setting screen (p.249).

## 2 Select the item for which you want to adjust the speed.

To reset the speed adjusted value  
Select "Reset".

## 3 Press ( ) to select "I", "L" or "H", and then press ( ) to adjust the speed.



You can adjust each speed to one of 0 (left edge) to 11 (right edge) levels. Moving ( ) to the right increases its speed, and to the left decreases its speed.  
Speed adjustment → p.251

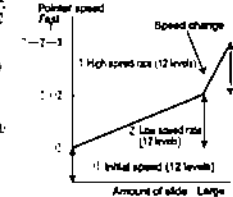
## 4 Select "OK".

### Speed adjustment

The pointer speed increases in 3 steps as the Neuropointer key is slid.

① Initial speed → ② Low speed area\* → ③ High speed area\* The speed for each step is as follows. ① Initial speed is the adjusted value for ① Initial speed, ② Low speed area\* is the total of the adjusted values for ① Initial speed and ② Low speed area\*, and ③ High speed area\* is the total of the adjusted values for ① Initial speed, ② Low speed area\* and ③ High speed area\*. Accordingly, if the adjusted values for ② Low speed area\* and ③ High speed area\* are set to 0 (left edge) the pointer speed remains at ① Initial speed because nothing is added to the value for ① Initial speed. If the adjusted values for ② Low speed area\* and ③ High speed area\* are set to 1 or larger, the pointer speed increases as the Neuropointer key is slid because the values for ② Low speed area\* and ③ High speed area\* are added to that for ① Initial speed.

Relation between the amount of slide and the pointer speed (range)



### Notes

- Even if "Pointer" is set to "OFF", pressing ( ) adjusts the pointer speed, however, you cannot adjust the speed, checking it with the pointer.
- The speeds such as the pointer speed or the speed for automatic item selection in (Follow) may differ depending on the screen to be operated.

## Adjusting the slide range

If the pointer movement becomes unstable, adjust the maximum slide range of the Neuropointer key.

- Adjust the slide in the order of upper, lower, left and right direction.

**1** Select "Slide" on the Neuropointer setting screen (p.249).

**2** Select "Adjust".

A message is displayed asking you whether to adjust the slide.  
To reset the slide adjusted value  
Select "Reset".

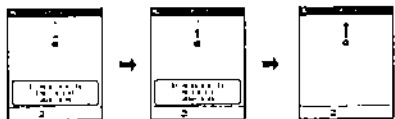
**3** Select "YES".



To cancel slide adjustment  
Select "NO".

**4** Slide the Neuropointer key according to the guidance on the screen.

Slide the Neuropointer key all the way upward/downward/left/right, and hold it until the guidance disappears. After adjusting in upper/lower/left/right direction, a message notifying you that the slide adjustment is completed appears.



- If you receive a voice/videophone call or an alarm for "Alarm clock", "Schedule", "ToDo", or you use other functions during slide adjustment, the adjusted value is destroyed. When the operation of other function is finished, the slide adjustment screen reappears. Adjust the slide again from the upper direction.

Reset settings

## Resetting the Setting to the Default

You can return the functional settings to their initial settings.

- You cannot reset settings while "PIM lock" or "Safe mode" is set.
- If the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device such as a PC, "USB mode setting" does not return to the initial setting.
- To reset i-mode functions, perform "Reset settings" under "i-mode setting". —p.125
- For items that cannot be reset by the "Reset settings" function, see p.389.

**1** Select (Menu) ► "Other settings" ► "Reset settings"

and enter the security code.  
Security code — p.193

**2** Select "YES".

To cancel reset  
Select "NO".

Functions that can be reset

Settings	Function	Default setting
Settings	Incoming call	Phone/V-phone: Level 4 Mail/Message: Level 4
	Select ring tone	Phone: Pattern 1 V-phone: Pattern 1 Mail: Pattern 2 Msg. Request: Pattern 3 Msg. Free: Pattern 3
	SRS_WOW setting	ON
	Vibrator	Phone: OFF Video-phone: OFF Mail: OFF Msg. Request: OFF Msg. Free: OFF
	Burmeson	Phone: Color 5 Video-phone: Color 5 Mail: Color 1 Msg. Request: Color 1 Msg. Free: Color 1 Pattern: Standard Color name: Color 1-12 Adjust color tone: Default
	Manner mode set	Manner mode "Original" settings Record/Msg.: OFF Vibrator: ON Phone vol.: Silent Mail vol.: Silent Alarm vol.: Silent VIA tone: ON Keypad sound: OFF Mic Gain/over: Up LVA tone: OFF
	PH book image	ON
	Answer setting	Any key answer
	Fold setting	End the call
	Mail/Msg. ring	Mail: ON Ring ring time: 3 seconds Msg. Request: ON Ring ring time: 3 seconds Msg. Free: ON Ring ring time: 3 seconds
	Ring ring time	Ring start time: 0 second Missed call display: Display
	Info notice set	On Japanese display: 日本語 (Electronic sound) On English display: ON
	Call FIMC/i-mode	Answer
	Call FIMC/Packet	Answer
Talk	Noise reducer: ON Quality alert: High tone Reconnect start: No tone Burn in call: OFF Select hold tone: On hold tone: Tone 1 Holding tone: Mute/stop	

	Function	Default setting	
Settings	Video phone	Image quality	Normal
		Camera image sending	Off
		Select image	On hold: Pre-installed Holding: Pre-installed Camera off: Chars den Record message: Pre-installed
		Voice call auto SW	OFF
		Remote member	Other ID: Not stored Ringing time: 3 seconds Set: OFF
	Display	Disp. Setting VP	Main display: Other image Change display size: Main display size
		Display setting	Stand-by display: Cat And Dog Wake-up display: London Bridge Dialing: Standard Calling: Standard Mail sending: Standard Mail receiving: Standard Checking: Standard Wake-up message: Default
		Display light	Lighting: ON Power saver mode: ON Light time: 5 minutes Charging: Standard Area: LCD+Keys Brightness: Level 2
		Color pattern	Pattern 1
		Image window	Image window setting: ON Stand-by: OFF Clock type: Analog 1 (Photograph: Off) Image set: Pre-install (Cat And Dog) Called: ON (Image-phone number) Mail: OFF Connection: ON (Display light: OFF)
		Font	Type: Font 1 Thickness: Medium
		Original menu	Den number Check new message Ring volume Vibrator Alarm clock Change security code
		Menu display set	Guidance: ON Menu display: Detail
		Viewer settings	Picture
		Automatic display	OFF
		Call data	Call time display: ON
		Clock	Clock display
	Set remote time		Time zone: GMT+00:00 City: London Summer time: OFF
	Alarm setting		Alarm preferred
	Lock/Security		Self mode: OFF (Reset) Keypad dial lock: OFF Reject: Unknown Accept Call sec. via ID: Accept (When ringing answer all)

	Function	Default setting	
Settings	Connection setting	Connect timeout	60 seconds
		1-mode checking	Mail: OFF Msg. Request: ON Msg. Free: ON
		Host selection	1-mode User defined host: Returns to <No records>
		SMS center sel.	DeCoMo
		Car/Scale P-1	All ruled
		Disp. set in's	Not display
		Display light	Depends on system
		Vibrator	Depends on system
		Image window	Depends on system
		External option	Earphone
	Automatic answer		OFF Ringing time: 8 seconds
	Network setting	Initial dial setting	Auto assist setting: AUTO, Japan, B1 Country Code setting: Japan, #1 ISD Prefix setting: WORLD CALL 009130010
		IMR search mode	Auto
		Operator name disp.	Display: ON
		Network search	Auto P-2
	Other settings	Keypad sound	ON
		Charge sound	ON
		Side keys guard	OFF
		Input method	Input mode: All valid Prior mode: Mode 1 (5-touch) Prediction: ON Guidance: ON
		Record disp. set.	Received calls: ON Rec'd/Deleted calls: ON
		Subaddress set.	ON
		Prfx's setting	Prfx's name: WORLD CALL Prfx's: 009130010 (User defined setting returns to default setting)
		New speaker	Pointer: ON Focus: Follow Speed: Initial speed
USB mode setting # 3		Communication mode	
Accessory		Camera	Camera set: Out camera
	Shot interval: 0.5 seconds		
	Number of shots: 3		
	Charge to continuous mode: Auto		
	Image size		
	Photo mode: Continuous mode, Picture mode: Mail (L/N178x144)		
	Movie mode: Change capture: Long duration mode: Large (178x144)		
	File size setting: Mail attachment		
	Storage setting: Normal		
	File resolution: File unrestricted		
Auto save setting: OFF			
Auto timer shutter delay time: 12 seconds			
White balance: Auto			
Shutter sound: Sound 1			
Display size: Actual size			
Image tuning: Mode 1 (50Hz), Mode 2 (60Hz) (depending on shipping region)			
Schedule	Monthly display User learn: Returns to Not stored		
Alarm clock	OFF		

Function	Default setting	
Accessory	Record message	OFF Answer message: Japanese 1 Ringing time: 8 seconds
	Voice announce	Start tone: OFF
	Forwarding image	Forwarding image
Network service	Answer	Answer
Phonebook	Unlink	All OFF
	Restrictions	All OFF
Open data	Common phrases	Default: preinstalled common phrases (Folder 1 and 2 are must including the folder name)
Multimedia	Image	Set image disp.: Standard
	Music	List setting: Title image Image disp. set.: Actual size
	Character	Character (not. Photo mode) Substitute image: オン/オフ (Demo) Image disp. set.: Fit in display Format size: Large(178×144) Move type set.: Normal Storage setting: Normal
Other	Volume	Level 4
	Manner mode	OFF
	Driving mode	OFF
	V-phone settings for Videophone calls	Brightness: 0
	Light for Videophone calls	All time ON
	Last one function for Phonebook search #14	Search by: Japanese (reading)
Last one function for desktop icon #14	Left end of the first page	

#1: Only root certificates are reset.

#2: This setting cannot be reset until you power off and on again the FOMA terminal.

#3: This setting cannot be reset while a USB cable is connected to the FOMA terminal.

#4: "Last one function" is the function that automatically follows the setting you set last time.

## Services Available for the FOMA Terminal

Service	Phone number
Collect call (calls charged to the receiver)	(No area code) 106
Directory information for general phones and DoCoMo mobile phones (charged) (Unlisted phone numbers cannot be given.)	(No area code) 104
Telegram (charged)	(No area code) 115
Time (charged)	(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (charged)	Area code of an area you want to know - 177
Emergency call to the police	(No area code) 112
Emergency call for a fire engine or an ambulance	(No area code) 119
Emergency call for help with nursing accidents	(No area code) 118

- When you use the Collect Call service (106), the called side will be charged a service fee of 90 yen (84.5 yen including tax) per call as well as the call charge. (As of XX, 2004)
- When you use the Directory Information Service (104), you will be billed for the call charge plus an additional service charge 100 yen (105 yen including tax). A free service is available for persons with sight or upper-limb handicaps. For details, call 118 (NTT Sales counter) from a general phone. (As of XX, 2004)
- When you call 110 (police), 119 (fire or ambulance) or 118 (emergency number for nursing accidents) from the FOMA terminal, the police or the fire department cannot detect your location and may need to call you back for confirmation purposes. You should tell them that you are making a call from a mobile phone and provide your phone number and exact current location. You should also take care to stay in the same place during the call so that the call is not disconnected. Do not turn the FOMA terminal off for at least 10 minutes after the call so that you can receive calls.
- Depending on your location, there is a possibility that you may not be connected to the police or the fire department for the area you are in. If this happens, call from the nearest pay phone or general phone.
- If you use the "Call Forwarding Service" or "Voice Warp Service" for your general phone and specify your mobile phone number as the forwarding destination, callers may hear a ring tone even when your mobile phone is busy, outside the service area, or turned off, depending on your settings.
- Note that 118 (NTT Sales counter), Dial Q2, Message Dial and credit card calls are not available. (Credit card calls can be made from general phones or pay phones to the FOMA terminal.)

## ● Camera

---

Before Using the Camera .....	XXX
Shooting a Still Image .....	XXX
Shooting a Movie .....	XXX
Changing the Settings for Shooting .....	XXX
Changing the Camera Settings .....	XXX
Using the Bar Code Reader .....	XXX

## Before Using the Camera

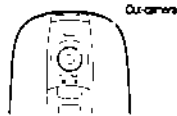
You can use the built-in camera in the FOMA terminal to shoot a picture (still image) and movie.

- Out-camera is equipped with a 1.24 mega pixel vMAICOVICON sensor. When "Mega pixel mode" is selected, you can shoot a large still image of 1280×860 dots. We recommend you to take a still image in this mode when you operate the image on a PC.
- You can print out or edit an image with the printer that supports "Exif Ver2.2" or "PIM II (PRINT Image Matching II)" and software as you like, utilizing the shooting information stored in the still image.
- Because FOMA supports DPOF (Digital Print Order Format), you can store the specific information about still images you want to print out and the number of images in a miniSD memory card. → p.306
- You can save a picture or movie shot by the built-in camera to the miniSD memory card and use them on your PC. You can also send the data to your PC by using the data link software (p.470).
- For shooting movies, you can select recording images only or recording audio only other than recording images and audio. → p.270
- You can also shoot a still image/movie with the Auto timer. The Auto timer can prevent camera shake during shooting. → p.264
- You can attach a commercially available tripod on the backside of the desktop holder. Set the FOMA terminal on the desktop holder to shoot a still image/movie using the tripod.
- FOMA is equipped with out-camera (installed on the rear panel of the body) and in-camera.
- For shooting, the shortest distance of about 50 cm is required for a standard lens or about 5 cm for a macro lens.

## How to use the camera

### Out-camera

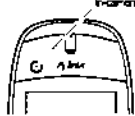
Can be used to shoot other people, animals or landscapes. The image is displayed as you view the object (shot in the same orientation shown on the display). You can also take a close-up shooting by switching the out-camera to a macro lens.(p.275).



Out-camera

### In-camera

Can be used to shoot yourself. The image is displayed in the mirror orientation (shot in the symmetrical orientation shown on the display).



In-camera

- The 1.24 mega pixel (effective) vMAICOVICON sensor is designed, incorporated by extremely high-precision technology, but there may be some lines or dots on the screen that appear permanently dark or bright. Note also that the amount of noise in the image (white lines, etc.) may increase noticeably when you take pictures in dimly-lit places.
- Wipe the lens clean with a soft cloth before taking pictures. Fingerprints or grease on the lens can result in focusing problems or dark images.
- Take care not to apply force to the lens when folding your FOMA terminal. This could damage the lens.
- The image quality may be degraded after the FOMA terminal has been left for a long period in a hot place.
- Do not expose the camera to direct sunlight or shoot the sun or extremely bright lamps directly. This could cause the discoloration of the shot images or damage the camera.

## Shooting still images

- You can store up to 400 still images. These numbers may vary depending on the amount of image data.
- The approximate number of storable images are as follows:

Mode	Format setting	Storage setting	The number of storable images	
			FOMA terminal	miniSD memory card (1GB/2GB)
Mega pixel mode	1280 × 860	Unrestricted	approx. 8 images	approx. 30 items
		Restricted (Large)	approx. 20 images	approx. 33 items
Photo mode	640 × 480	Unrestricted	approx. 22 images	approx. 148 items
		Restricted (Large)	approx. 40 images	approx. 177 items
Photo macro/ Continuous mode	362 × 288	Unrestricted	approx. 36 images	approx. 272 items
		Restricted (Large)	approx. 36 images	approx. 272 items
		Restricted (Mid)	approx. 133 images	approx. 688 items
		Restricted (Small)	approx. 40 images	approx. 299 items
	Sized by (740 × 263)	Unrestricted	approx. 80 images	approx. 444 items
		Restricted (Large)	approx. 80 images	approx. 444 items
		Restricted (Mid)	approx. 200 images	approx. 688 items
	Mid (Large) (176 × 144)	Unrestricted	approx. 200 images	approx. 688 items
		Restricted (Large)	approx. 133 images	approx. 688 items
		Restricted (Mid)	approx. 200 images	approx. 688 items
Mid (Small) (128 × 96)	Unrestricted	approx. 200 images	approx. 688 items	
	Restricted (Large)	approx. 200 images	approx. 688 items	
	Restricted (Mid)	approx. 200 images	approx. 688 items	

## Shooting movies

- You can store up to 100 movies. These numbers may vary depending on the amount of image data.
- By default setting, you can shoot a movie up to about 15 seconds long. However, the shooting time per movie depends on the conditions of shooting object due to the various amount of data.
- The maximum continuous shooting time for Long duration mode is approximately 60 minutes.
- The number of storable movies also depends on the shooting time due to the various amount of data.
- The approximate number of and the available shooting time for movies are as follows:

Mode	Format setting	Camera mode/file size setting	The number of storable movies (shooting time)
Movie mode	Large (176 × 144)	Mail attachment	32-100 items
		Local playback	3-100 items
		Long duration mode	approx. 35 minutes*

\* The shooting time for Long duration mode is the approximate total time when a 1GB/2GB miniSD memory card is used in default setting.

## How to view the shooting display



Photo mode/Continuous mode/Mega pixel mode



Movie mode/Chance capture/Long duration mode

- ① Turns ON/OFF the light. It is displayed when the out-camera is used for shooting.
- ② Indicates the brightness of the image. The icon (Lux) appears showing the number of shot images and shoot enable images during shooting in "Continuous mode" (manual).
- ③ Displays when the Auto timer is set.
- ④ Displays the size specified in "Format setting" (p.269).
  - 1280x960**: 1280×960 (Mega pixel mode only)
  - 640x480**: 640×480
  - 352x288**: 352×288
  - 176x144**: "Mail (L) (176×144)" in Photo mode/Continuous mode, "Large (176×144)" in Movie mode
  - 128x96**: "Mail (S) (128×96)" in Photo mode/Continuous mode, "Small (128×96)" in Movie mode
- ⑤ Indicates the Photo mode.
  - Mega pixel mode
  - Photo mode
  - Continuous mode/Long duration mode
  - Picture voice
  - Movie mode
  - Chance capture
- ⑥ Indicating the detail of "Storage setting" (p.270).
  - FILESD**: Unrestricted
  - FILE R**: Restricted (Large)
  - FILE L**: Restricted (Mail)
- ⑦ Displays "Movie type set" (p.270).
  - TC**: Normal
  - IC**: Image
  - V**: Voice
- ⑧ Displays camera status.
  - STANDBY**: Standby
  - REC**: Recording
- ⑨ Displays "File size setting" (p.272).
  - FILE M**: Mail attachment
  - FILE L**: Local playback
  - FILE SD**: Long duration mode
- ⑩ Displays "Storage setting" (p.271).
  - NORMAL**: Normal
  - FINE**: Fine mode
  - LONG**: Long duration mode
- ⑪ Displaying (remaining time in "minutes.seconds" format. (Not displayed before shooting.)

- If "Format setting" is set to "Stand-by (240 x 269)", the guidance portion of the shooting screen is not displayed.

## Notes on using the camera

### Precautions when taking pictures

- The tone of the color and the brightness of the still image/movie shot with the built-in camera may differ from the actual object.
- Note that if you attempt to shoot directly into a strong light source, such as the sun or bright light, the image may turn dark or be disrupted.
- Make sure that your finger, hair or strap is not covered over the camera during shooting.
- While using the camera, battery power is drained quickly. Turn off the camera function as soon as you are finished.

- When the following actions occur while you are continuously shooting multiple photos or movies, the camera operation is suspended and the camera screen is switched to the appropriate action screen. When you close the screen, you can return to the camera screen, allowing you to store the data shot before switching to the other screen such as an incoming call and alarm notification. If the following actions occur while you are setting the zoom or brightness adjustment, the value upon the action becomes effective and return to the camera menu. When the following actions occur during Auto timer operation, it will be canceled.

- When receiving a voice or videophone call
- When executing alarm notification of "Schedule", "Alarm clock" and "ToDo"
- When operating other functions
- Not canceled in the following cases;
  - When you receive a mail or Msg. Request/Free during shooting with camera (including while the shooting screen displayed), the shooting operation continues without the received result screen displayed, regardless of the setting of "Receiving display" (p.224).
  - If you set "Alarm setting" (p.209) for "Operation preferred", camera operations/settings and Auto timer will not be interrupted when alarm which you have set is activated.
- The volume of shutter and timer activation sound is not controlled by the "Ring volume" setting, and will maintain a certain volume.
- The shutter sound and timer start tone can be heard even the FOMA terminal is set to "Manner mode" or "Driving mode". And they can also be heard from the speaker even when the "Earphone" is selected in the "Earphone" setting.
- Moving the FOMA when you take a picture will result in a blurred image. Hold the camera firmly to keep it still when you take a picture or use the Auto timer to take the shot.
- The FOMA terminal download a picture or movie only after (Record) has been pressed. Fix the FOMA securely after releasing the shutter, until the check mark screen appears to indicate the completion of downloading.
- When you use the camera indoors, there may be screen glare from fluorescent lighting. It is recommended to set image tuning function (p.252 and p.261) in advance to avoid screen glare. Please note that it may not be possible to completely eliminate all screen glare when objects are of certain colors or if the lighting is especially strong.
- Immediately after displaying the shooting screen, switching the cameras, or changing the camera setting, it may take a certain time to display the proper brightness and colors.
- If "Format setting" is set to "352 x 288" or larger, the image size is reduced for the preview screen displayed when a still image is shot.

### About Copyright Information

- Changing, modifying and processing another's portrait without permission is in breach of the "Right of portrait". Therefore, refrain from copying, editing and processing photographs and movies taken, filmed or recorded with the FOMA terminal in a illegal fashion. Please be aware that in certain situations, filming or recording plays, performances and exhibitions may be prohibited even if for personal use.

- ⚠ Please be considerate of the privacy of individual's around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

## Taking a Still Image

You can take a picture (still image) you like with the built-in camera. The shot still image is saved in JPEG format in the folder of "Image" selected at the time of saving.

- The shot still image can directly be saved in a miniSD memory card. In this case, insert a miniSD memory card in your FOMA terminal in advance. →p.363
- If you designate the place to store the still images in advance, they will be stored automatically at that destination. →p.273
- See p.256 when you want to utilize pre-shooting camera application functions, such as brightness adjustment and formal setting.
- The saved still image picture can be displayed or edited in "Image". →p.294 and p.295

### 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Camera".

You can also startup the camera using the desktop icon for "Camera" that appears by default on your standby display.

To display the list of shot still image  
Select "View photo" from the function menu.

### 2 Select "Photo mode" or "Mega pixel mode" to display the shooting screen.



Photo mode

You cannot startup "Mega pixel mode" while using Multi-task function.

To check the memory  
Select "Memory info" from the function menu.

To change the camera

Select "Front camera" or "Rear camera" from the function menu.  
Even when the camera is closed, the setting of the selected camera is retained.  
The still image of "1280 × 960", "640 × 480" (VGA) can be shot only while the Rear (out-camera) is used.

### 3 Watch the display screen to display the subject you want to shoot.

Check the shooting screen by adjusting the opening angle of FOMA terminal body if necessary. Make sure that your fingers do not cover the camera.  
When you do not press any key for 3 minutes or more, the shooting screen is automatically closed.

When the screen is flickering

Select "Image tuning" from the function menu to change the scanning frequency to "Mode 1 (50Hz)" or "Mode 2 (60Hz)" depending on your area.  
"Image tuning" is available only when you are using the out-camera. The setting of the image tuning is retained even when the camera is closed. The setting at the time of purchase depends on the area where your FOMA terminal was shipped.



### 4 Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to keep it still and then select (Record) or press (Memo/Check).



The shutter sound emits at the time of shooting and the check mode screen appears.

Check the picture you have shot.  
If "Auto save set" (p.273) is "ON", the images taken will be automatically saved at the storage destination ("Camera" folder of "Image" or miniSD memory card).  
You cannot restart shooting, edit the shot still image, and compose an i-mode mail on the check mode screen after a still image is saved automatically.

To restart shooting

Press  (Cancel) or  (OK) and then select "YES".

When the shooting is canceled, the screen returns to the shooting mode screen and restarts shooting.



To change the shot still image in Normal display/mirror display

Select "Normal display" or "Mirror display" from the function menu.  
Selecting "Mirror display" turns the image left side right.

Mirror display is selected when the in-camera is used. The check mode screen on the image window also sets Mirror display by default. Regardless of this display setting, if the still image is saved, it will be saved as Normal display.

To edit the shot still image

Select "Effect" from the function menu and press "YES". Then, select "Phone" or "miniSD" as storage for the image. If you select "Phone", select the folder to which you save the image. The shot image is saved in the selected folder, allowing you to make a process. Press "NO" to process the image without being saved. Select "Frame" or "Retouch" from the function menu on the displayed preview screen for process setting. For details of operation procedure →p.256  
You cannot manipulate unsaved still images in case of "Mega pixel mode" or in case that the image size is set to "640 × 480" in the "Photo mode".

To attach the shot still image to an i-mode mail and send the message immediately

Select "Compose message" from the function menu.

A screen appears to compose an i-mode mail with the picture attachment. →p.168

You cannot be able to attach some pictures to an i-mode mail depending on the amount of data. →p.162

A picture taken in "Mega pixel mode" cannot be attached to the i-mode mail.

To set the shot picture to the standby display or the substitute image

Select "Set as display", and select "Phone". Then, save a still image to a folder and select the destination to which you paste it.

You cannot select the miniSD memory card as a storage location.

### 5 Press [Save] and select "YES".

To save the shot still image as a mirror image

Instead of pressing  [Save], select "Mirror save".

Even the still image taken on the check mode screen is shown in Normal display, the image is saved as a mirror image.

A picture that specifies a frame cannot be saved as a mirror image.

### 6 Select either "Phone" or "miniSD" as storage destination. If you select "Phone", also select a folder.

The image will be saved in normal display regardless of the check mode display setting (normal display or mirror display). To continue shooting, repeat Step 3 to 6

For file name of saved still images →p.289

To switch camera mode

If you want to continue to use the camera in a different mode, on the shooting screen, select "CHG camera-mode" from the function menu and select either "Continuous mode" or "Movie mode".



**To take still images with a set frame**

On the shooting screen, select "Select frame" from the function menu and choose a frame you want to use. Frame list → p.472  
To cancel the frame you selected, select "Select frame" from the function menu and "OFF".  
After taking photos, you can change the frame by selecting "Change frame" from the function menu on the check mode screen, although this will not cancel the frame.

If you choose an image size of "M4" or "4.3M" when the camera is in "Mega pixel mode" or "Photo mode", you will not be able to take photos with frame.

You can display frame examples by pressing [Play] up or frame select.

You can use the camera with your FOMA terminal folded. Although, the frame you have selected will not be displayed in the image window.

**To take still images with your FOMA terminal folded**

You can shoot using the image window as a finder for displaying an image caught by the rear camera.  
While the standby display is not using multi task function is displayed and with your FOMA terminal folded and with your FOMA terminal folded, hold down [Memo/Check] [M] for 1 second or more.

Even if you close your FOMA terminal when the shooting screen is displayed, the rear camera will be activated automatically and an image caught by the rear camera will be displayed in the image window. If you press [Memo/Check] for 1 second or more on the shooting screen, you can turn off the camera. If you press [Memo/Check], you will hear the sound of a shutter and the image will appear in the image window. Open the FOMA terminal and go to Step 3.

To automatically save the still images with the FOMA terminal folded, shoot with the "Auto save set" (p.273) set to "ON" in advance. If "Auto save" is set to "OFF", the auto timer can be used for shooting with your FOMA terminal folded.

• If you set "Side keys guard" "ON", [Home] and [Memo/Check] will be inactive and you will also not be able to use the camera or turn on the light (p.254).

• The image on the image window will be scaled down depending on the display, and will serve you as a guide upon shooting images.

- If the amount of data exceeds the limit set for "Storage setting" (p.270), a message appears to inform you that no additional data can be stored. Press [Select] to return to the check mode screen. If an error occurs while compressing data, a message appears to inform you of the image recording failure. Press [Select] to return to the shooting screen.
- With "Storage setting" set to "Unrestricted", when you carry out "Compose message", a message appears notifying you that i-mode mail cannot be created if the size is too big. Press [Select] to return to the check mode screen. Also, if an error occurs during a data compression, a message appears notifying you that the picture could not be taken. Press [Select] to return to the shooting screen.
- When the maximum number of saved data is reached in the saving destination folder or when there is no space, a message appears asking whether to delete the unnecessary images before saving. Select "YES" to save, delete unnecessary images until the remaining bytes of insufficient capacity becomes 0 and select the storage location. If you select the miniSD memory card as a storage location and there is not enough space in the miniSD memory card, a message appears notifying you that there is not enough space and the saving location selection screen reappears.

**Taking continuous multiple pictures**

You can take still images as continuous multiple pictures using the continuous mode. You can save the continuous multiple pictures as original animation or you can save all or selected photos as still images. If you save them as an animation, it can be replayed using "Image" (p.294).

- Press the shutter after setting "CHG cont. mode" to "Auto", and you can take continuous multiple pictures at the set interval or with Auto timer (p.264). When "CHG cont. mode" is set to "Manual", you can take still images continuously every time the shutter is pressed.
- If you designate the place to store the images in advance, they will be stored in that location automatically. → p.273
- If closing a FOMA terminal while shooting in the continuous mode, the shooting ends. When "CHG cont. mode" is set to "Manual", pressing the [Exit] can also end the shooting.

<Example: To store all continuous multiple pictures when "CHG cont. mode" is set to "Auto">

- 1 Select "Continuous mode" to display the shooting screen.  
→ p.251
- 2 Display the object you want to take on your display screen.

**To take a continuous shooting manually**

To press the shutter for each still images and take continuous multiple pictures, select "CHG cont. mode" from the function menu and then select "Manual".

**To change the number of the continuous multiple pictures**

To change the number of the continuous multiple pictures, select "Interval Number" from the function menu and then select "Shot number". Enter the number of pictures.

If you enter wrong number of the continuous multiple pictures, a message appears notifying you that the number cannot be specified.

The number of continuous multiple pictures you can take for "Mail (L)" (176 × 144) and "Mail (S)" (128 × 96) and 5-20 and for "Stand-by" (240 × 269) is 5-10 pictures.

When "Format setting" is "352 × 288", the number of continuous multiple pictures is 4, not allowing you to specify "Shot number".

If the Shot number is set to 11 or more and "Format setting" is changed to "Stand-by (240 × 269)", the Shot number is set to 10.

**To change the intervals of the continuous multiple pictures**

To change the speed of the continuous multiple shooting, select "Interval Number" from the function menu and then select "Shot interval" to specify the interval.

You can change the speed from "0.5 seconds", "1.0 seconds" or "2.0 seconds". However, you cannot select "0.5 seconds" if "Format setting" is set to "352 × 288".

Using the zoom → p.254

Using the light → p.254

- 3 Hold the FOMA terminal steady and the press [Cont.] or [Memo/Check].



Do not move your FOMA terminal just after shooting.

The shutter sound emits for every shooting.

When the shooting is complete, the check mode screen is displayed.

Press [Select] to set the still image with a blue frame. If you press [Select], the color of the frame turns red, indicating you that the picture has been selected. When you want to select all still images, select "Select all" from the function menu.

To cancel selecting the still images, select the still images you want to release and then press [Select]. To cancel selecting all the still images, select "Release all" from the function menu.



To display the details of the selected still image

Select the still image with [Detail] and then press [Detail].

The still image will be displayed in the blue frame.



Mirror display

To switch Normal display/Mirror display for the shot continuous multiple pictures

Select "Normal display" or "Mirror display" from the function menu

All the still images will be displayed in the selected display mode. Selecting "Mirror display" turns the image left side right.

The check mode screen indicates "Mirror display" by default when the in-camera is used.

#### 4 Select "Store all" from the function menu and then select "Save" or "Mirror save". Select "YES".

When you select "Save", the pictures are saved normally. The pictures are saved according to how you selected in the Step 4 (regardless of the Normal display/Mirror display on the check mode screen).

To save continuous multiple pictures as an animation

Select "Store all/animation" from the function menu.

Select "YES" to select a destination folder, and then select the items that you save a link file (animation file).

When "Store all/animation" is selected, you cannot store the pictures in a miniSD memory card.

To store the selected pictures only

Select the pictures and then select "Store selection" from the function menu. Select "YES".

If you select "Save" from the function menu on the detail display screen and then select "YES", you can save the still images that show the details. Stored still images will not be displayed on the check mode screen.

#### 5 Select either "Phone" or "miniSD" as storage destination. If you select "Phone", also select a folder.

Repeat the Step 3 to 5 when you want to continue shooting.

#### NOTE

- When "Format setting" is set to "352 × 288", the intervals of the continuous multiple pictures set to "1.0 seconds". Also, if you change "352 × 288" to other sizes for "Format setting", the number of the continuous multiple pictures set to 5.
- If you select "Store all/animation" to save continuous multiple pictures, the still images will be stored in a folder of the "Image" that you selected and link files to the animation (animation files) will be saved in the "Original animation" folder of the "Image". The file names for original animation and still images can be changed on "Image".
- If you choose to save continuous multiple pictures as still images, they will be stored in a folder of the "Image" as individual photos. "Original animation" allows you to replace still images in the continuous multiple pictures. → p.204
- If the continuous multiple pictures are saved as still images, you can edit them on "Image". → p.296
- If the amount of data exceeds the limit set for "Storage setting" (p.270), a message appears to inform you that no additional data can be stored. Press [Select] to return to the check mode screen. If only part of the continuous multiple pictures were stored, a message appears to inform you that some of the photos in the continuous multiple pictures could not be taken. Also, if an error occurs during a data compression, a message appears notifying you that picture could not be taken. Pressing [Select] to return to the shooting screen.
- When the maximum number of saved data is reached in the saving destination folder or when there is no space, a message appears asking whether not to delete the unnecessary images before saving. Select "YES" to save, delete unnecessary images until the remaining bytes of insufficient capacity becomes 0 and select the storage location. → p.307
- If you select the miniSD memory card as a storage location and there is not enough space in the miniSD memory card, a message appears notifying you that there is not enough space and the saving location selection screen reappears.

#### Adding voice to a picture (still image)

#### <Picture voice>

You can add voice on a shot picture.

- The stored pictures with added voice according to this function are stored as movies in the folder of "i Motion" selected at the time of saving. After saving the pictures, you can play the voice using "i Motion", clip the part of the movies (p.315), or send the pictures attached to an i-mode mail. → p.321
- This feature can be applied only to pictures that are newly taken or saved in the View photo. This feature cannot be applied to downloaded pictures.

<Example: To add voice on a newly taken picture>

#### 1 Select "Picture voice" - "Photo mode" to display the shooting screen. → p.251

To add voice on a picture saved in the FOMA terminal

Select "View photo".

The formats you can select on the list of images include "Mail (L) (176 × 144)", "Mail (S) (128 × 96)" only. Selecting pictures → p.294

#### 2 Press [Record] or [Memo/Check] to shoot a still image. → p.251



#### 3 Press [Record] or [Memo/Check] to record voice.



The recording operation stops automatically when the total data amount of the picture and voice reaches 95 KB.

#### 4 Press [Stop] or [Memo/Check] to finish the recording.

To send the picture attached to an i-mode mail

Select "Compose message" from the function menu. Edit the title if necessary and then press [Set]. The composition screen of i-mode mail with a movie attached is displayed. → p.168

#### 5 Press [Save] and then select "YES". Edit the title if necessary and press [Set].

#### 6 Select either "Phone" or "miniSD" as storage destination. If you select "Phone", also select a folder.

#### NOTE

- When you change "Format setting" while this feature is running, only "Mail (L)" and "Mail (S)" are available. When "Format setting" is set to other than "Mail (L)" or "Mail (S)", "Mail (L) (176 × 144)" is set when the function is startup.

## Shooting a Movie

You can shoot a movie with voice with the built-in camera. The movie can be shot with either image or voice only. →p.270

Movie clipped with "Movie mode" is saved to a folder of "i Motion" you selected to save. By using the "Long duration mode", the maximum continuous movie length that can be saved in the miniSD memory card is 60 minutes.

- The shooting time differs depending on shooting conditions such as the subjects.
- Shooting operation is terminated when you fold your FOMA terminal during shooting.
- You can save a movie shot in the "Movie mode" directly in a miniSD memory card. When you save the movie into the miniSD memory card in the "Movie mode" or shoot the movie in the "Long duration mode", insert a miniSD memory card into the FOMA terminal in advance. →p.363
- The movie can be saved automatically setting "Movie mode" if you shoot it after specifying the destination to save the image in advance. →p.273
- Movies shot with the in-camera are displayed with the check mode as mirror. However, if movies are played and stored, they are normally displayed. It is impossible to play or store movies as mirror.
- See p.266 when you want to utilize pre-shooting camera application functions, such as brightness adjustment and format setting.
- You can play the shot movie with "i Motion" and edit it. →p.308 and p.313

### 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Camera".

At purchase, you can also startup the camera by selecting the "Camera" desktop icon on the standby display.  
To display the list of recorded movies  
Select "View movie".

### 2 Select "Movie mode" or "Long duration mode" to display the shooting screen.



If you are using the multitask function, you cannot start up "Long duration mode".  
To check the memory  
Select "Memory info" from the function menu.  
To change the camera  
Select "Front camera" or "Rear camera" from the function menu.  
Active camera remains the same even if you end the camera session.

Using the zoom →p.254  
Using the light →p.254

### 3 Watch the shooting screen to display the subject you want to shoot.


When you do not press any key for 3 minutes or more, the shooting screen is automatically closed.

When the screen is flickering

Select "Image tuning" from the function menu to change the scanning frequency to "Mode 1 (50Hz)" or "Mode 2 (60Hz)" depending on your area.  
"Image tuning" is available only when you are using the out-camera. The setting of the image tuning is retained even when the camera is closed. The setting at the time of purchase depends on the area where your FOMA terminal was shipped.


### 4 Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to keep it still and then select [Record] or press [Memo/Check].



Start tone will sound when you start recording and the image you are recording will be displayed on your terminal screen.  
While recording, incoming light will flash.  
The data amount is different depending on the shooting conditions such as the subjects, and will serve you as a guide upon shooting time.  
When the movie data reaches the limit, a message appears to inform you of the end of recording. Press  [Select] to display the check mode screen for Step 5.

### 5 Press [Stop] or [Memo/Check] to stop the recording.




When the recording is completed, a beep sounds notifying you of the completion of recording operation and the check mode screen is displayed.  
Press  [Play] to play the recorded movie.  
The microphone sensitivity during shooting is "Normal" regardless of the "Mic sensitivity" setting in "Original" as Manner mode set.

To shoot a movie using "Long duration mode"

The shot movie is automatically saved in the miniSD memory card.  
If "Auto save set" is "ON" in "Movie mode", the shot movie will be automatically saved at the storage destination ("Camera" folder of "i Motion" or miniSD memory card).  
You cannot restart shooting and compose an i-mode mail on the check mode screen after a still image is saved automatically.

To restart recording

Select "Cancel" from the function menu, and then select "YES".  
Restart recording when the display returns to the Shooting screen after canceling.

To attach the shot movie to an i-mode mail and send the message immediately  
Select "Compose message" from the function menu. Edit the title if necessary and then press  [Set].

A screen appears allowing you to compose an i-mode mail with the movie attached. →p.168

You may not be able to attach a movie to i-mode mail depending on its data size →p.162

When you shoot a movie, by specifying "File size setting" (p.272) to "Local playback", you may not be able to send data as i-mode mail attachment due to size not allowable to i-mode mail attachment.

To set the shot movie to the standby display

Select "Set as stand-by" from the function menu and select "YES".

Edit the title if necessary, then select the save-in location.

You cannot set movies shot in "Long duration mode" and saved in a miniSD memory card as the standby display.

### 6 Press [Save] and then select "YES". Edit the title if necessary and then press [Set].

File name of saved movies →p.283

### 7 Select either "Phone" or "miniSD" as storage destination. If you select "Phone", also select a folder.

To continue recording, repeat Step 4 to 7.

To switch camera mode

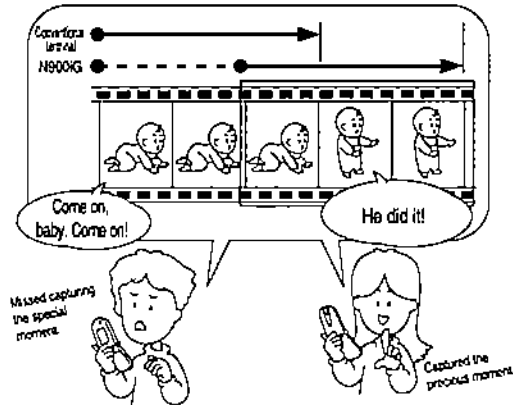
If you want to continue to use the camera in different mode, on the shooting screen, select "CHG camera mode" from the function menu and select either "Photo mode" or "Continuous mode".

## NOTE

- Even if recording using the Long duration mode ended because no recording time left is displayed on a POMA terminal, the miniSD memory card may still have free space. This depends on the movie size, which depends on the recording conditions such as the type of subject.

## Recording a movie without missing the important scene <Chance capture>

When filming using the built-in camera, this function allows you to exceed the available recording time. This function will not let you miss filming an important scene.



- A movie shot is saved for recordable time (approximately 15 seconds by default) back from the point at which you finish shooting, and the prior portion is not saved.
- If you have finished shooting a movie before exceeding the recordable capacity, it is saved from the beginning to the end as the same way in the "Movie mode".

## 1 Select "Chance capture" to display the shooting screen. →p.260



## 2 Record the movie. →p.260



The unused recording time is displayed as "\*\*\*\*" during recording once the maximum recording space exceeds.

## Using the zoom to enlarge an image

To zoom in on the screen image by one level, press  $\odot$  on the shooting screen. Press  $\ominus$  to zoom out on the screen image by one level. To set the image size, press  $\odot$  [Set]. When you do not press any keys for 2 seconds, the size currently displayed is automatically set.

The scaling factor for image enlargement is as follows:

### For shooting still images

Rear/Front camera	Picture size	Zoom level	Maximum scaling (approximate)
Rear camera (Out-camera)	640 × 480	10	2x
	562 × 268		3.3x
	Standby (240 × 259)		2x
	Mail S1 (178 × 144)		6.6x
	Mail S1 (128 × 96)		10x
Front camera (In-camera)	Mail S1 (178 × 144)	2	2x
	Mail S1 (128 × 96)	3	



- When the "Format setting" is set to "1280 × 960" for shooting using the rear camera, or "352 × 288" or "Standby (240 × 259)" for shooting using the front camera, you cannot enlarge the object with the zoom function.

### For shooting movies

Rear/Front camera	Picture size	Zoom level	Maximum scaling (approximate)
Rear camera (Out-camera)	Large (178 × 144)	10	4.2x
	Small (128 × 96)		6.2x
Front camera (In-camera)	Large (178 × 144)	2	
	Small (128 × 96)	3	2x

- When "Movie type set" is set to "Voice", you cannot enlarge the object with the Zoom function.
- If button operations such as zooming are performed while recording movies, the sound generated by such operation may be recorded.

## NOTE

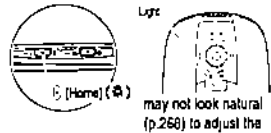
- "Normal" is set when no adjustment is made. When you turn off the camera, it returns to the "Normal" setting.
- Zoom is not based on the optical but the digital system.

### Turning on the light

You can flash the light for shooting in low light such as Interior of a room. When the light is ON, the out-camera is used for shooting. You can keep the light on for 30 seconds.

On "Continuous mode" (Auto) and "Movie mode", if you start shooting while the light is flashing (for 30 seconds), you can keep the light on until the shooting ends. For switching the light "ON"/"OFF", press [ON] or [OFF], or [Home] (⊕) on the shooting screen.


- When you turn on the light and then display the function menu or make some setting on the function menu, the light turns off. When you exit the function menu or terminate the setting, the light turns on again.
- When you take a picture in the dark, the place may not be bright enough even if the light is ON. The color of photo with some source of light. In this case, use "White balance" color as you like.



### Taking pictures and shooting movies using the auto timer

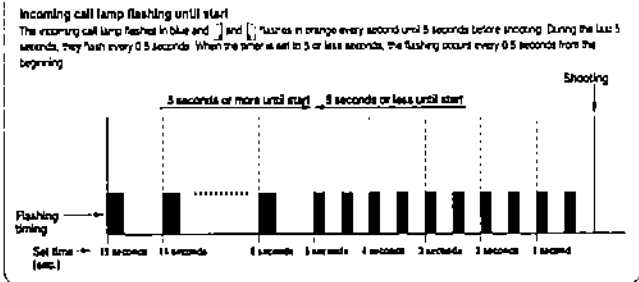
If you set the Auto timer before shooting, you can automatically take pictures, continuous multiple pictures or record movies without pressing the shutter by yourself. This feature is useful for preventing camera shake as well as including yourself partying the picture.

- When "CHG cont. mode" is set to "Manual" for shooting in "Continuous mode", the Auto timer is not available.
- When completed, the Auto timer setting returns to "OFF". However, shutter delay time setting is retained even if the camera is switched off.
- If a FOMA terminal closes while the auto timer is operating, the auto timer terminates and the count is cleared. However, the auto timer setting remains valid.

- 1** Select [Menu] (Ⓜ) ▶ [Camera].  
At purchase, you can also start up the camera by selecting the "Camera" desktop icon on the standby display.
- 2** Select the mode in which you want to shoot an image to display the shooting screen.  
When you do not press any key for 3 minutes or more, shooting screen is automatically closed.
- 3** Select "Auto timer" from the function menu and then select "ON".
- 4** Set the delay time (01-15 seconds) until the start of shooting.  

 Default setting is "10 seconds".  
 Enter the time as 2 digits. To set a value in the range of 1 to 9 seconds, enter a number of "01" - "09".  
 When a value other than 01 to 15 is entered, a message appears notifying you that the value cannot be set.
- 5** Watch the shooting screen to display the subject you want to shoot.  
Place the FOMA terminal on a desk, etc. to be more stable.

### 6 Press [Record] or [Memo/Check] to start the shooting operation with the Auto timer.

When the start tone of the Auto timer sounds, the Auto timer operation starts progress. [S] flashes during the timer operation. A short double beep "pipip" sounds every second from 5 seconds before the start of shooting. After the set time elapses, the start tone sounds and the shooting starts. To cancel the Auto timer, Press [Out] or [Stop] during Auto timer operation.



## Changing the Camera Settings

You can set your personal preferences for the built-in camera shown as following. The following settings are available:

Function	Setting description	Settable camera mode	Setting timing	Setting when camera off	See page
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of the image.	All camera mode	Before shooting	Not retained	p.267
Photo mode	Changes Photo mode according to the conditions.	All camera mode	Before shooting	Not retained	p.267
White balance	Adjusts images to natural colors according to the light source at shooting.	All camera mode	Before shooting	Retained	p.258
Color mode set	Enables shooting in sepia or monochrome.	All camera mode	Before shooting	Not retained	p.258
Format setting	Changes the image size.	Photo mode/Continuous mode Picture voice Movie mode/ Chance capture/ Long duration mode	Before shooting	Retained	p.269
Display size	Changes the display size.	Photo mode/Continuous mode Picture voice Movie mode/ Chance capture/ Long duration mode	Before/After shooting	Retained (Setting when shooting)	p.270
Movie type set	Minut a shot with image or voice only.	Movie mode/ Chance capture/ Long duration mode	Before shooting	Not retained	p.270
Storage setting	Changes the storage site of still images.	Photo mode/Continuous mode Picture voice	Before shooting	Not retained	p.270
Storage setting	Changes the movie quality.	Movie mode/ Chance capture/ Long duration mode	Before shooting	Retained	p.271
File size setting	Changes the file space of movie.	Movie mode/ Chance capture	Before shooting	Retained	p.272
Shutter sound	Selects the shutter sound.	All camera mode	Before shooting	Retained	p.272
Auto save set	Changes the saving method after shooting.	Mega pixel mode/Photo mode/Continuous mode Movie mode/ Chance capture	Before shooting	Retained	p.273
Memory info	Checks the storage space of camera/downloaded images.	All camera mode	Before shooting	—	p.274
File restoration	Qualifying still images/movies being sent forward by the receiver.	Mega pixel mode/Photo mode/Continuous mode Picture voice Movie mode/ Chance capture	Before/After shooting/After saving*	Retained	p.274

\* To set options after shooting and saving, use "Image" and "Movie" for still images/continuous multiple pictures and movies, respectively.

## Operational flow

This section describes the operation flow to set up the applied functions of the camera.

### 1 Select (Menu) ► "Camera".

You can also startup the camera using the desktop icon for "Camera" that appears by default on your standby display.

### 2 Select the camera mode to display the shooting screen.

### 3 Select functions you want to set from the function menu.



Photo mode

About Function names → p.266

## Adjusting the brightness

<Brightness>

Default setting | ±0

### 1 Adjust brightness on the brightness control screen.



Press ◀ to decrease the brightness, and press ▶ to increase the brightness. The brightness can be adjusted in 5 levels, from -2 to +2.

-2: Dark  
-1: Slightly dark  
±0: Normal

+1: Slightly light  
+2: Light

When you do not press any keys for 2 seconds during the adjustment, the setting is automatically set.

## Selecting the Photo mode

<Photo mode>

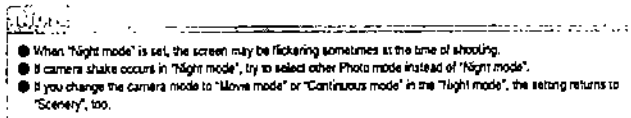
Default setting | Scenery

- When using "Continuous mode", you will not be able to select "Movie mode" or "Chance capture" for "Night mode". When using "Long duration mode", you will not be able to select "Night mode".

### 1 Select Photo mode on the Photo mode selection screen.

Scenery : Suitable for shooting scenery.  
Portrait : Suitable for shooting person.  
Close-up : Suitable for shooting a subject closely.  
Night mode : Suitable for shooting in the dark place. Selectable for shooting in Mega pixel mode or Photo mode.

When the camera is switched off, the setting returns to "Scenery".

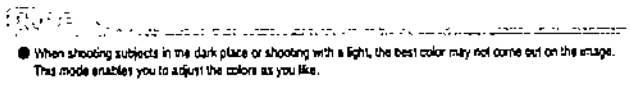


### Adjusting the white balance according to the light source <White balance>

Default setting    Auto

#### Select image quality on the white balance selection screen.

- Auto : Adjusts the white balance automatically.
- Fine : Selected for shooting outdoors in a sunny day.
- Cloudy : Selected for shooting in a cloudy day, shaded area, or the evening hours.
- Light bulb : Selected for shooting under the lighting when a light bulb.



### Shooting images in sepia or monochrome tone <Color mode set>

Default setting    Normal

#### Select image color on the color mode screen.

- Normal : Shot in color.
  - Sepia : Shot in sepia tone.
  - Monochrome : Shot in black & white.
- When the camera is switched off, the setting returns to "Normal".

### Changing image size of shooting <Format setting>

Default setting    Photo mode + Continuous mode + Picture voice: Mail (L) (176 × 144)  
Movie mode + Chance capture + Long duration mode: Large (178 × 144)

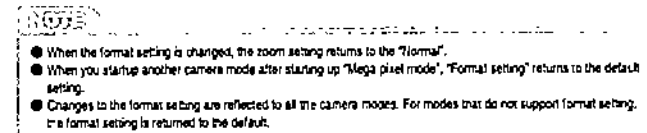
The following picture size is selectable:

Image size	Selectable camera mode	Setting description
640 × 480	Photo mode	The size is set to VGA (640 (H) × 480 (V) data) with the camera.
352 × 288	Photo mode/Continuous mode	The size is set to CIF (352 (H) × 288 (V) data)
Stand-by (240 × 269)	Photo mode/Continuous mode	The size is set to the size for the standby display (240 (H) × 269 (V) data)
Mail (S) (176 × 144)	Photo mode/Continuous mode	The size is set to 176 (H) × 144 (V) data.
	Picture voice	
Large (176 × 144)	Movie mode/Chance capture/Long duration mode	
Mail (S) (128 × 96)	Photo mode/Continuous mode	The size is set to 128 (H) × 96 (V) data.
	Picture voice	
Small (128 × 96)	Movie mode/Chance capture/Long duration mode	

\* In the "Mega pixel mode", the image size is only set to 1280 × 960 so that the size cannot be changed.

<Example: When Photo mode is selected>

#### Select the size of image on the format setting selection screen.



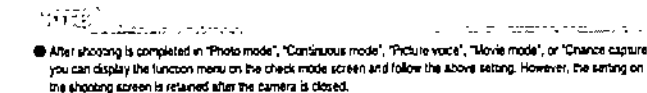
### Changing the size of display <Image display set>

Default setting    Actual size

- When "Format setting" is set to "Stand-by (240 × 269)" or larger size, the image is always displayed in the main display size, not allowing you to change the size of display.
- You can not change image size when "Mega pixel mode" is selected.

#### Select display size on the image display setting screen.

- Actual size : Displays the image in an actual size.
- Fit in display : Displays the image based on the display size.



## Using Voice and Shutter

### Making a shot with image or voice only <Movie type set>

Default setting    Normal

- When "Voice" is set, you cannot specify "Brightness", "Photo mode", "White balance", "Color mode set", "Format setting", "Display size", "Storage setting" and "Image tuning" from the function menu. You cannot change the camera or flash the light, either.

#### Select movie type on the movie type setting screen.



- Normal : Shoots an image and records voice.
  - Image : Shoots an image only.
  - Voice : Records voice only.
- If you select "Voice", the screen display tells you that the sound is currently being recorded.

### Specifying file space at saving <Storage setting>

You can limit the file capacity for saving images to that in which mail can be attached.

#### 1 Select storage capacity on the storage setting screen.

- Unrestricted : Stores an image file of up to 500 KB.
  - Restricted (Large) : Select this setting when you attach a large (up to 100KB) image to i-mode mail.
  - Restricted (Mail) : Select this setting when you attach an image to an i-mode mail.
- The default sets "Restricted (Mail)" and "Restricted (Large)" when "Format setting" is set to "352 x 288" or smaller and "640 x 480", respectively.  
A still image taken in Mega pixel mode is set to "Unrestricted", not allowing you to change the setting.

- When "Format setting" is set to "640 x 480", you cannot select "Restricted (Mail)".
- When "Storage setting" is set to "Unrestricted" and you try to attach a still image taken in "Photo mode" or "Continuous mode" to an i-mode mail to compose the message, the limit of file space may exceed. In this case, a message appears notifying you that the i-mode mail cannot be composed. Press **[Select]** to go back to the check mode screen. When an error occurs during the data compression, a message appears notifying you that the picture was not successfully taken. Press **[Select]** to go back to the shooting screen.
- If "Storage setting" is "Restricted (Large)" or "Restricted (Mail)", image quality may be degraded.

### Setting the image quality <Storage setting>

Default setting Normal

You can set the image quality of movies.

- Image quality cannot be selected when "Movie type set" is set to "Voice".

#### 1 Select image quality on the storage setting screen.

- To specify storage setting (in Movie mode)
- Normal : Both image quality and shooting time are based on normal setting.
  - Fine mode : Although image/sound quality for each frame is high, the number of frames will be limited and movements will not be smooth. This option is suitable for movies with few movements.
  - Long d.r. mode : The quality of the image becomes low for each frame, but the recordable time becomes longer. The number of frames becomes reduced.

### Changing the file space of movies <File size setting>

Default setting Mail attachment

You can set the file space for shooting in "Movie mode". "Local playback" extends the shooting time.

#### 1 Select file capacity on the file size setting screen.

- Mail attachment : Select this option when you attach a shot movie to an i-mode mail. You can store up to 95 KB per movie.
- Local playback : Select this option when you record a long movie. You can store up to 500 KB per movie.

### Selecting the shutter sound <Shutter sound>

Default setting Sound

You can set the shutter sound that can be heard at shooting. The selectable shutter sounds for each Photo mode are as follows:

Photo mode	Shutter sound	
Mega pixel mode/Photo mode/Picture voice	Start tone	
Continuous mode	Auto	Start tone
	Manual	Start tone
Movie mode/Quick capture/Long duration mode	Start tone, End tone	

- Start and end tones are set for Auto timer. However, the timer tone that sounds between the start of the Auto timer operation and shooting is not set (the timer tone is fixed).
- When you set the shutter sound for "Mega pixel mode", "Photo mode", "Picture voice" or "Continuous mode", the setting is reflected for all of these modes. Also when you set the shutter sound for "Movie mode", "Chance capture" or "Long duration mode", the setting is reflected for all of these modes.

#### 1 Select the shutter sound on the shutter sound selection screen.

Use **[Left]** to select Sound 1 to 3. The selected sound will activate at the pre-set volume.

- During the Manner mode, even if the shutter sound is selected, the shutter release sound for confirmation is not emitted. However, if operation during Manner mode set "Original", the shutter release sound is emitted depending on the setting option.

### Saving a picture (still image) or movie automatically <Auto save set>

Default setting OFF

If "Auto save set" is "ON", the images taken will be automatically saved in "Camera" folder of "Image" / "Motion" or in miniSD memory card.

- When "Auto save set" is set to "ON" in "Continuous mode", all of continuous photos are saved automatically by operating "Store all" but the linked files (animation file) is not saved.
- The still image is saved automatically as normal display even if taking a mirror display.

#### 1 Select "ON" on the auto save setting screen.

Select "OFF" not to save automatically.

#### 2 Select either, "Phone" or "miniSD" as storage destination.

- If the amount of data exceeds "Storage setting" limit, a message appears to inform you no additional data can be stored even if "Auto save set" is "ON". Press **[Yes]** to return to the check mode screen.
- If "Phone" is set to "Select to save" and the space of "Image" or "Motion" is full, a message asking you whether to delete unnecessary still images or movies before the save operation appears. To save, select "YES" and select the still image or movie to be deleted. If "miniSD" is set to "Select to save" and the space in the miniSD memory card is full, a message notifying you the miniSD memory card is full appears and the "Select to save" screen is displayed again.



Camera

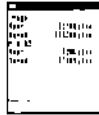
Checking memory information

<Memory info>

You can check the information about unused/used data space for the FOMA folders and a miniSD memory card that store shot still images or recorded movies.

<Example: When Photo mode is selected>

1 Check capacity on the memory information screen.



When a miniSD memory card is not inserted in your FOMA terminal, the memory information for the miniSD memory card is not displayed.

Disabling still images/movies being sent/forwarded by the receiver

<File restriction>

Default setting Unrestricted

You can set this mode to disable shot still images/movies being sent/forwarded from the FOMA terminal of the recipient. When "File restriction" is set to "Restricted", the recipient cannot attach the shot still images/movies to an i-mode mail to output the message from one's FOMA terminal.

- Even if "File restriction" is set to "Restricted", the still images or movies sent by Infrared exchange function or exported to miniSD card can be transmitted from FOMA terminal.

1 Select or unselect file restriction on the file restriction setting screen.

- File unrestricted : Enables shot still images/movies being sent/forwarded from the FOMA terminal of the recipient.
- File restricted : Disables shot still images/movies being sent/forwarded from the FOMA terminal of the recipient.

To select continuous multiple pictures and set up file restrictions. Select the continuous multiple pictures you want to set up on the check mode screen and select "File restriction" from the function menu and then select "Restricted". Selecting "Restriction all" allows you to set file restrictions on all continuous multiple pictures.

- You can set the same setting by displaying the function menu on the check mode screen after taking pictures or shooting movies. In this case, set it up before saving the picture or movie contained in the pictures or continuous multiple pictures taken.
- When you want to set "File restriction" after shooting and storing is completed, select desired still images or still images/movies included in continuous multiple pictures on the list screen of "View movie" or "View photo", and then proceed the setting from the function menu. You can also proceed the setting from "Image" (for still images and continuous multiple pictures) or "Motion" (for movies).

## Using the Bar Code Reader

The built-in camera enables you to scan bar code (JAN code), a character and number string included in QR code.

This scanned information can be added to the Phonebook or bookmark and used to compose a mail and start up I-cuppli. You can also utilize Phone To function, Mail To function and Web To function by selecting the character information.

- Up to 5 sets of information can be registered.
- No bar code or 2-D code can be scanned except JAN code and QR code.
- Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to keep it still during operation. The terminal can be more stable when you place the FOMA on your hand or a book.
- Depending on the scratch, dirt, damage, printing quality, how the light is reflected and the QR code version, the bar code may not be recognized properly.
- Depending on the type and the size of the bar code, it may not be able to be read.
- When scanning the bar code, maintain a distance of approximately 7cm between the out-camera and the bar code.
- When you paste the bar code reader as the desktop icon on the standby display, you can call up this function quickly. — p.170

### About JAN code/QR code

#### JAN code

Bar code that represents numbers with various lines (bars) in size and space. 5- or 13-digit bar codes or scanned.



#### QR code

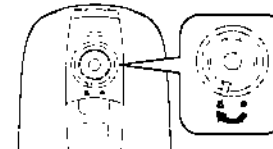
One of the 2-D codes that represents the data of alphanumeric and kana characters in a vertical/horizontal direction. Some QR code contains images and melody data. As another type, one piece of information is divided into several QR codes.







Example: NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

## Switching the lens of the out-camera

- The lens of the out-camera needs to be switched to  (macro lens) with lens selection switch.



When switching the lens selector, take care not to touch the lens and push the selector fully to the  (standard lens) or  (macro lens). Never leave it halfway. After you have switched the selector to  (macro lens) and taken shots, we recommend returning it to  (standard lens).

## Scanning bar code

### 1 Select (Menu) ► "Bar code reader".

You can also start up "Bar code reader" from the function menu on the shooting mode screen in Photo mode. If there is any information registered, the bar code reader list screen will be displayed. Select "New" to capture bar code information. No bar code data is initially registered.

### 2 Display the bar code you want to scan within the scanning range.



Display the bar code to be scanned as large as possible within the scanning range. If the whole bar code is not fit within the scanning range or if it cannot be sharply focused, switch the lens of the out-camera to the normal lens with lens selection switch and try it again.

To switch the zoom

When you zoom in, press .

When you zoom out, press .

To use the light

Press (ON) or (Home) (OFF).

Press (OFF) or (Home) to turn off the light.

### 3 Press [Record] to scan the bar code.



When the scanning is completed, the information is displayed. When the scanning is not completed correctly, the FDMA repeats auto scanning for 30 seconds.

To restart scanning

Press .

To read information of a bar code divided into multiple ones

Select "OK" and repeat Step 3 and 4 to read the bar code information.

### 4 When the scanning is completed, select "Store" from the function menu.

To edit the title

After storing the bar code, select "Edit title" from the function menu on the list of Bar code reader to change the title.

To check the contents of the stored character information

Select the title you want to check on the list of the Bar code reader to display the detail screen. You can also display the detail screen by selecting "Result" from the function menu.

#### Notes

- If there are already 5 sets of information registered and you select "New" on the bar code reader list screen, a message appears asking you whether or not you want to overwrite the data. Select "YES" to overwrite the oldest information with new data.
- When you do not press any key for 3 minutes or more on the screen of step 3 on p.282, you go back to the bar code reader screen.
- If another transmission operation is conducted (such as a voice or videophone call, or alarm notification of Alarm clock, Schedule or ToDo) before you register the information that you have read, the bar code information will be saved temporarily and the screen will be switched to the one used for such transmission operation. Upon completion of the transmission operation, you are returned to the bar code reader list.

## Using the scanned information

This scanned information can be added to the Phonebook or bookmark and used to compose a mail and start up i-cuppl. When the scanned bar code contains an image or melody data, you can store the data after displaying or playing it.

The followings are the information you can use:

Purpose	Characters to be Highlighted	Usable/Storeable Information
To add to the Phonebook	Phone number Mail address	Phone number Mail address
To add all to the Phonebook	Add to phonebook	Name, reading, phone number, mail address, memo
To compose a mail	Mail address Compose message	Mail address Mail address, subject, body
To display a site or Web page	URL	URL
To add URL as a bookmark	URL	URL, site name
To start up i-cuppl	Activate i-cuppl	-
To make a voice call	Phone number	Phone number
To make a videophone call		
To display an image	Image	Image
To save an image		
To play a melody	Melody	Melody
To store melody		

<Example: For information on a Phonebook>

### 1 On the bar code reader details screen, highlight the information you want to use.



Name, reading, phone number, mail address and memo information is displayed on the bar code reader details screen. If bar code information is an image, it will be displayed on the bar code reader details screen.

### 2 Use Information.

To store in the Phonebook

Select "Add to phonebook" from the function menu to store in the phonebook. → p.108

To display a site or Web page

Press [Select]. → p.43 and p.64

To save URL as a bookmark

Select "Add bookmark" from the function menu to save as a bookmark. → p.54

To start up i-cuppl

Press [Select]. → p.73

To make a voice/videophone call

Select [Select], "Voice-phone" or "Video-phone" and "Dial". → p.200

When a voice call or videophone call is made by selecting "Voice-phone" or "Video-phone" followed by "Dial", whether to notify your caller ID depends on the setting of "Notify Caller ID Service" (p.200). If you want to select whether to notify your caller ID when making a voice or video call, select "Notify caller ID" and "ON" or "OFF".

You can select an image to be sent during a videophone call by selecting "Dialing" and "Select image" when making a videophone call.

**To make an international call**

Select **[Select]**, "Voice-phone" or "Video-phone", "International call" and "Dial". →p.300

**To compose a mail**

Select **[Select]** to compose an i-mode mail. →p.300

**To save an image**

Select "Save image" from the function menu.

**To play a melody**

Press **[Select]**. →p.300

**To store a melody**

Select "Save melody" from the function menu.

Use all of the necessary information displayed in the bar code reader details screen to do the following operations.

**To add all to the phonebook**  
 Highlight "Add to phonebook" and select **[Select]** to add the information to the phonebook. →p.300

**To compose a mail**  
 Highlight "Compose message" and select **[Select]** to compose an i-mode mail. →p.300

**To add URL as a bookmark**  
 Highlight "Add bookmark" and select **[Select]** to add the URL as a bookmark.

**To delete information**  
 Highlight the site that you want to delete on the bar code reader details screen and select "Delete this" from the function menu, then "YES".

**To delete all information**  
 On the bar code reader details screen, select "Delete all" from the function menu then "YES".

- You can also read the information by starting up the bar code reader from the function menu on the character edit screen or i-rppk. However, you cannot display the registered information or save the information read. The bar code information of images or movies that cannot be displayed is changed to space.
- When you try to connect the Internet with the character information that starts with characters other than "http://" or "https://", a message appears notifying that the URL is incorrect.
- Inadmissible characters included in phone numbers, mail addresses or URLs are displayed as spaces in the detail screens and this information cannot be used. Inadmissible characters included in other than phone numbers, mail addresses or URLs are changed to spaces.
- When you compose new i-mode mail or register data in a Phonebook as a mail address, you can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters. If you enter more than 50 characters, a message appears to inform you that the number of characters exceeds the limit and asks you whether or not you still want to register the data. Select "YES" to enter 50 characters. The surplus portion will be deleted.
- To make a voice call, you can enter numbers up to 26 digits (including + (international access code)), #, \* and pause (p). If you enter more than 26, the surplus portion will be deleted.
- When storing the scanned characters to the Phonebook as a phone number, you can enter the numbers up to 26 digits (including + (international access code)), #, \*, and the pause (p). If the characters exceeding 26 digits are entered, a message appears to inform you that you cannot store the number and asks you whether or not you still want to store it. Choose "YES" to enter the numbers up to 26 digits, #, \*, and the pause (p). The surplus portion will be deleted.

## ● i-mode

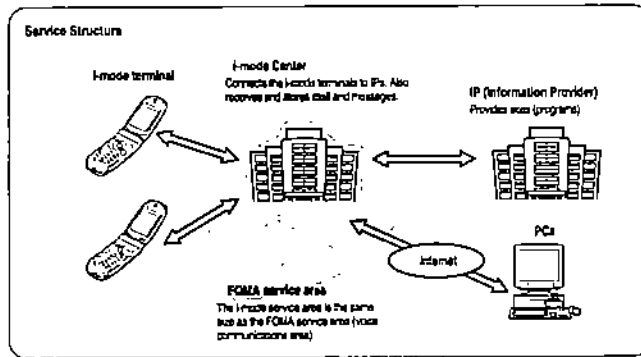
---

About i-mode .....	XXX
Displaying the i-mode Menu .....	XXX
■ Displaying a Site .....	XXX
Displaying a Site .....	XXX
How to View and Operate a Site .....	XXX
Adding a Site to My Menu .....	XXX
Changing the i-mode Password .....	XXX
Displaying a Web Page .....	XXX
Using a Bookmark .....	XXX
Displaying Sites You View Often Simply .....	XXX
Saving a Displayed Site .....	XXX
■ Downloading an Image/Melody from a Site .....	XXX
Downloading an Image/Melody from a Site .....	XXX
Downloading an Image from a Site or Message .....	XXX
Downloading a Melody from a Site .....	XXX
Downloading the Dictionary from a Site .....	XXX
■ Useful i-mode Functions .....	XXX
Using the Phone To, Mail To and Web To Functions .....	XXX
■ Making the i-mode Settings .....	XXX
Making the i-mode Settings .....	XXX

## About i-mode

The i-mode Service allows you to use an i-mode mail and an i-mode-compliant FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) to access and use various online services, such as the site (program) connection service or connect to the Internet, and use i-mode Mail.

- **Site (Program) connection service**  
This service enables you to view various sites provided by IPs (Information Providers) using simple key operations.
- **Internet connection service**  
This service enables you to use the i-mode terminal to connect to the Internet and access i-mode compatible Web pages.
- **i-mode mail service**  
This service enables you to send and receive mail not only with the i-mode terminals, but also with Internet e-mail users.



i-mode is a paid service to which you need to subscribe. Application Inquiries:  
Inquiries (DoCoMo Group)

○ Inquiries (DoCoMo Information Center):  
From an ordinary (landline) phone: 0120-005-250 (toll free) (in English) 156 (no area code) (toll free) (in Japanese only)  
From a DoCoMo mobile phone or PHS phone: 0120-005-250 (toll free) (in Japanese only)

※ You can call this number from any type of phone, including DoCoMo mobile phones and PHS phones.  
※ Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

## Services

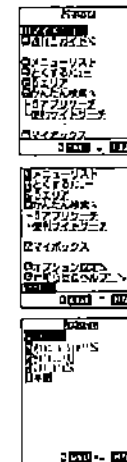
- Newly subscribing to FOMA service allows you to use all the services on the day of subscription.
- When you change your subscription from the mova service (signed for i-mode) to the FOMA service, the contents of "My Menu" you were using in the mova service can be carried over. However, some sites may not carry the contents of "My Menu" to the FOMA service. In this case, please make a subscription again. You can check the sites that support "My Menu" carry-over in the "お知らせヘルプ (News & Help)" in the iMenu.
- When you change your subscription from the mova service (signed for i-mode) to the FOMA service, you can continuously use your i-mode mail address.
- You are charged for transmission according to the amount of data (packets) sent and received. There is no information on transmission fees in this manual. For details on the fee schedule and other information, refer to the [FOMA i-mode User's Manual] provided when you subscribe to the i-mode Service.
- The contents of the i-mode Services are subject to change without prior notice. For detail information, refer to the [FOMA i-mode User's Manual].

## Site (Program) connection service

You can use simple key operations to connect to sites provided by IPs (Information Providers) to use their various online services. For instance, you can check your bank account balance, transfer money, reserve concert tickets, read news, use online dictionaries and/or download ring tones.

### ■ Displaying sites

When you connect to the i-mode Center, the iMenu screen appears. From this screen, you can access a variety of other sites as well as the "週刊ガイド (What's New!!)" screen. How to display the sites → p.42



Item	Description
① マイメニュー (My Menu)	Add frequently visited sites for easier access (p.53 and p.54). The URLs of pay sites are automatically added upon subscription. Up to 45 sites can be stored.
② 週刊ガイド (What's New!!)	This site provides information on new or recommended sites. Updated every Monday through Friday.
③ ニュースリスト (News List)	Sites are listed by category and area for your convenience. Select and connect to an interesting site from the Menu.
④ とくするメニュー (Tokusuru menu)	Interesting sites, campaign information, giveaways, discount coupons, and other information are featured here. This information is updated weekly (provided by U2 Communications).
⑤ エリア (Area)	Information on the area, such as weather and maps, etc. area provided here. → useful search.
⑥ みんな検索 (Simple search)	Provides an overview of sites offering free information on e-sport and gaming sites. Arranged by usage. Useful site search. Useful sites in daily life taken from Menu List are categorized by usage.
⑦ マイボックス (My box)	This member service requires advanced subscription with the service providers including stores and sites, allowing more convenient access. Once you make a subscription, you can access them easily.
⑧ オプション設定 (Option)	Set your i-mode mail preferences or i-mode password here.
⑨ お知らせヘルプ (News & Help)	Announcements from DoCoMo, help on how to use i-mode, and rules for using i-mode are available here.
English	Changes the iMenu screen in English.
日本語	Changes the iMenu screen in Japanese.

- Some sites may charge information fees (i-mode pay sites).
- You may have to subscribe separately to use some of the services provided by ISPs.
- A packet communication fee will be charged only for the communication with the i-mode Center, whether the i-mode icon flashes or not.
- If you subscribe to the "Dual network service", the iMenu screen, etc. may be displayed differently from those shown above.

■ Other features

■ I-motion

You can download videos and sound from i-mode sites to the i-mode terminal so you can set them to the standby display as well as enjoy playing the data.

- Downloading I-motion → p.96
- Playing I-motion → p.96
- Setting I-motion for auto play → p.120



To download I-motion, there are two communication methods available: packet communication that goes through the i-mode Center and digital communication that does not go through the i-mode Center.

■ movie ringtone

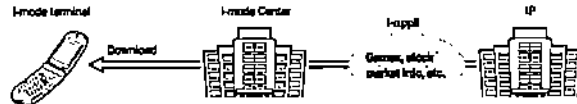
You can download I-motion from i-mode site to your i-mode terminal, and set it to a ring tone or incoming image. Not only melodies but also songs of your favorite singers can be used as the ring tone. You cannot set some I-motions that are not compatible with this function to movie ringtones.

- Setting movie ringtone → p.163

■ i-cppii

By downloading i-cppii from sites, you can make your i-mode terminal even easier to use. For example, you can download and play a range of games to an i-mode terminal or download an i-cppii that provides stock market information and allows you to automatically check stock prices at set intervals. There are also mapping application that allows you to download only the information you need so that scrolling is quick and smooth.

- Downloading i-cppii → p.69
- Running i-cppii → p.73
- Launching i-cppii automatically → p.79



■ I-cppii standby display

On this display, i-cppii can be used as a standby display, and while running, mails can be received on it and phone calls can be made from it. In addition, it can display the latest news and weather on the standby display. It can notify you when mail arrives or an alarm goes off using your favorite cartoon character, making your standby display even more convenient.

- Setting I-cppii standby display → p.86, and p.177

■ I-cppii DX

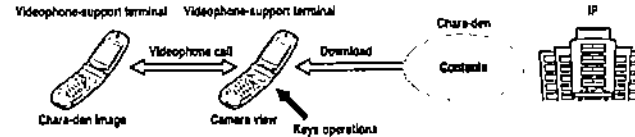
I-cppii DX links up with the information on the i-mode terminal (such as mails, dialed/received calls and Phonebook data) to make I-cppii even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes composing mail on your favorite cartoon character screen, having a cartoon character notify you of the sender of an incoming call or message, and linking with mail functions to provide real-time updates on the progress of games or desired information such as share prices.

- I-cppii DX → p.66

■ Chara-den

When using the videophone, you can display a cartoon character instead of your image, in the other party's videophone-support terminal. The cartoon character moves his or her mouth, as if he or she were speaking, in response to your voice. Also, you can move the cartoon character in a certain way by operating a key. Furthermore, you can download your favorite cartoon character; set a still image or a movie file showing the cartoon character to the standby display; and send mail to which the image or file has been attached. You cannot send an image or movie file, if it is prohibited to attach the file to mail or output it to outside the FOMA terminal.

- Downloading Chara-den → p.94
- Checking Chara-den → p.324
- Setting Chara-den → p.324
- Operating Chara-den → p.325
- Recording Chara-den → p.327

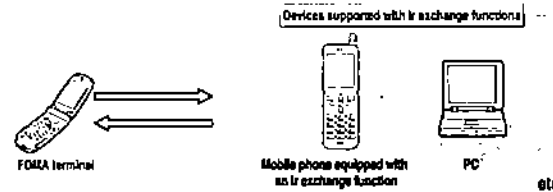


■ Infrared exchange function

Phonebook contents, mail and Bookmarks can be exchanged between mobile phones that are compliant with infrared exchange functions and PCs, etc.

Furthermore, using an i-cppii in conjunction with an infrared exchange function makes it possible to link with other devices equipped with infrared exchange function which broadens your use.

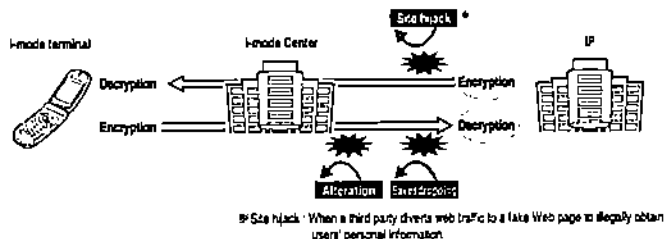
⚠: Even though the other device is equipped with an infrared exchange function, it may not be possible to exchange certain data.  
Using infrared exchange function → p.340



### ■ SSL communication

SSL is an abbreviation for Secure Sockets Layer, and is an encryption technology that is used to protect your privacy in data transmissions. Data sent to or received from an SSL page is encrypted to prevent hackers from eavesdropping data, site hijacking\* or altering, thus making credit card transactions and the sending of personal information (e.g. address) safer.

- Using the SSL communication → p.49



### ■ FOMA card operational restriction function

This function restricts the files of melody or still images/movies downloaded from a site or retrieved from a mail, when the FOMA card that stores your information (phone number, Phonebook (in part), etc.) is inserted in the terminal. If the FOMA card is replaced with another FOMA card, or you power on your terminal without the FOMA card inserted, this function prohibits the received files from being played or viewed.

About the FOMA card operational restriction function → p.19

### ■ i-melody

You can download the latest songs or music that you like to your i-mode terminal and use them as ring tones → p.118

You can also set i-motion as the movie ringtone. Furthermore, you can use not only a melody, but also the singing voice of, and a movie showing a singer you like as ring tone or image. → p.95

### ■ Images and Animations

You can download images or animations that you like to your i-mode terminal and display them on various screens, such as the standby display or the wake-up screen. → p.114

### ■ DL dictionary

You can download the dictionary files of dialects, technical terms, etc. from sites to the i-mode terminal, for use in conversion. → p.114

### ■ Message service

By subscribing to a site providing message services, you can receive your desired information (messages) automatically with your i-mode terminal. There are two kinds of message services, Msg. Request and Msg. Free.

Msg. Request	If you subscribe to a site which provides message service, your desired information will be delivered automatically as a message.
Msg. Free	You receive a message for free of packet communication charge, by making the reception setting in the optional settings.

\*How to receive message service → p.103 and p.105

When you cannot receive Msg. Request/Free because the terminal is turned off or "Msg." is displayed, they are stored in the i-mode Center.

- The maximum length of time and the maximum number of messages that can be stored at the i-mode Center are as follows. When the number of messages exceeds the maximum capacity, messages will be deleted starting from the oldest message.

	Maximum Capacity	Retention Time
Msg. Request	300 messages	72 hours
Msg. Free	300 messages	72 hours

- Msg. Request/Free that are stored at the i-mode Center can be received by Check new message. → p.105

### ■ i-mode password

You need your i-mode password to subscribe to pay sites, store release sites in "My Menu" and specify i-mode mail settings. The i-mode password is set to "0000" (4 zeros in figures) by default. Use your FOMA terminal to change the i-mode password as preferred → p.52. Take care to keep your i-mode password private.

## Internet connection

You can connect to the Internet and display an i-mode compliant Web page by entering its address (URL). For information on how to display a Web page → p.64

- Note that Web pages that are not i-mode compatible may not be displayed properly. An i-mode compatible Web page refers to a Web page that is created with i-mode-compatible tags.
- Web pages may look different displayed on the FOMA compared to a PC.
- Web pages with URLs of over 256 half-pitch characters may not be displayed.
- If you happen to access a page with a large amount of information, you can interrupt communication by canceling download.

## Useful functions

You can make a voice/video phone call or send a mail by easy operations, using data, such as a phone number, mail address and URL, displayed on a Web page or in the mail text.

Function	Description	See page
Phone To	Allows you to make a voice/video phone call by easy operations, using a phone number displayed on a Web page or in a mail and Msg. Request/Free text.	p.112
Mail To	Allows you to display the new mail screen, using a mail address displayed on a Web page or in a mail and Msg. Request/Free text.	p.113
Web To	Allows you to access a Web page from a URL, displayed on a Web page or in a mail and Msg. Request/Free text. Note that some sites are not compatible with this function.	p.114

- In addition, you can download and save melody and dictionaries, save images, start i-ruppli, download and save i-motion, as well as add telephone numbers and mail addresses to your Phonebook → p.114



**When you display pages stored in cache**

- The cache is a location in the FOMA terminal where data on the Web pages you have displayed are saved temporarily. Pressing to move to another page while a site or Web page is displayed, enables you to view the stored page as cached data that does not have to be downloaded. However, if the Website data is larger than the cache size of the FOMA terminal or if you display a Web page set to always download the latest information, communication starts even when you press . Even if the page is stored in the cache, communication runs and the latest information is displayed when the date-time information in this page is updated.
- Even when site data is downloaded from cache, the text and settings you entered on previous visits are not displayed.
- The cache is cleared when you disconnect i-mode.
- When you download SSL-compatible pages from cache, the "Displaying TLS/SSL page" message appears.

**When using i-mode**

- The information on sites (programs) or Internet Web pages is protected by copyright laws. Texts, pictures, and other data downloaded from these sites (programs) or Internet Web pages to your FOMA terminal are permitted only for your personal use. No data may be copied in part or in whole, whether modified or not, for resale or redistribution without prior permission.
- Note that all data saved (mail, Msg. Request/Free, screen memos, i-rings and i-motons) or stored entries (e.g. Bookmarks) in your FOMA terminal is retained for about 1 month even if the battery pack is removed or is completely discharged. However, data may be lost after that period. Note also that the information stored in your FOMA may be lost when your FOMA is damaged, repaired, or otherwise mishandled. It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored in the FOMA. Under no circumstances shall NTT DoCoMo be held liable for any loss of or damage to the stored data in your FOMA.
- When the FOMA terminal is repaired or handed in other ways, the information downloaded using the i-mode, i-rings and i-motons will not be transferred to the new mobile phone according to the copyright law. Also, when the FOMA card is replaced with another one or the power is turned on with the FOMA card removed, melodies, images, and i-motons downloaded from websites, screen memos with images and i-motons, and Msg. Request/Free with melodies and images, attached or pasted cannot be displayed or played.

**Displaying the i-mode Menu**

This section describes how to use basic operations with your i-mode.  
About i-mode — p.24

**1 Press p () while the standby display is displayed.**

The i-mode menu screen appears. There are 9 items in this menu. The main operations in i-mode begin from this screen.

You can also display the i-mode menu by selecting (Menu) — .

When is displayed

- The FOMA is either out of the i-mode service area or at a place where radio waves do not reach you. The i-mode service area is the same size as the FOMA service area (voice communication area). Move to a location where the radio wave level indicator lights up.
- i-mode is communication-based service, so it cannot be activated when is displayed.
- You can display the i-mode menu even when is displayed.

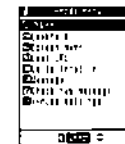
When flashes

You attempt to connect a site (p.42) or the Internet (p.64), or send an i-mode mail (p.152) although you are not receiving an

i-mode service within the service area. It may take several minutes to start an i-mode session.

When flashes

An i-mode session is in progress.



Item	Description	See page
Menu	Initial page which appears when you connect your FOMA to the i-mode Center. You can access various sites (programs) and "What's New" from this page.	p.26 p.42
Bookmark	Once you add your favorite Web page addresses on your i-mode terminal, you can quickly access the sites next time.	p.54
Screen memo	Displays the i-mode screen(s) stored in your i-mode terminal.	p.56
Last URL	Displays the last site or Web page you visited.	p.62
Go to location	Allows you to returned to i-mode compliant Web pages or the Internet by directly entering the address.	p.63
Message	Displays received Msg. Request/Free. Message service provides automatic delivery of desired information to your i-mode terminal.	p.100
Check new message	Inquires to the i-mode Center whether i-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free is kept.	p.106
i-mode settings	Makes settings for i-mode related functions on your FOMA terminal.	p.118

**2 Exiting an i-mode screen****1 Press during i-mode and select "YES".**

flashes, and turns off.



- If you hold down for 1 second or more while sending/receiving i-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free, or making an inquiry to the center, the transmission and reception of i-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free will be canceled. However, it may be sent/received depending on the timing of the cancellation.
- The power will be turned off when you hold down for 2 seconds or more.
- If i-mode mail, SMS or Msg. Request/Free is sent to you while is displayed or when the FOMA terminal power is turned off, the i-mode Center will keep i-mode mail and Msg. Request/Free, and the SMS center will keep SMS for you.

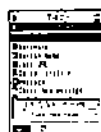
## Displaying a Site

Various services are offered by IPs (Information Providers). You can check your bank account or reserve a variety of tickets on the display of your FOMA terminal.

- Service lists vary depending on the sites. Some sites may require you to make a subscription.
- Some sites may charge subscription fees (i-mode pay sites).

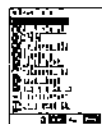
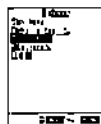
### Connecting to a site

- 1 Select **[MENU]** ► "IMenu".



Starting i-mode → p.32  
An animation appears, indicating you that the page is being loaded.  
To cancel the operation of page receiving  
Press **[END]** [Out].

- 2 Select "English" ► "メニューリスト(Menu List)" and then specify the site you want to access.

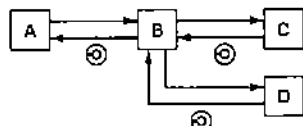


Displaying Menu in English → p.44

#### NOTE

- You can select any underlined items on a page. The selected item will be highlighted.
- To view the page displayed before the current page, press **[LEFT]**. Press **[RIGHT]** to go back to the previous page and then view the next page.
- You can skip back to the first page displayed so far by continuously pressing the **[LEFT]**. However, if you press **[LEFT]** to view the previous page at some point (to return from [C] to [B]) and then access a different page (from [B] to [D]) from there, pressing **[LEFT]** twice from page [D] does not display page [C]. Instead, pages [D], [B], and then [A] are displayed.

When sequence of pages displayed is [A]→[B]→[C]→[B]→[D]



— Page display sequence  
— Sequence when previous pages are viewed

- If a Flash image is displayed, display operation may differ.
- Depending on sites, since the screen color of a site may exceed the maximum display color of a FOMA terminal, the screen may be different from the real one.
- You can use Store schedule to add a schedule while viewing a displayed page → p.335

### Reconnecting to the page you viewed last

<Last URL>

You can use the last URL function to display the last site or website you visited. The URL of the last Web page displayed on the screen can be stored in Last URL.

- Depending on the page type such as "Data received" screen, some URLs may not be stored by the last URL function.

- 1 Select "Last URL" from the i-mode menu.

i-mode menu → p.25

To cancel the operation of page receiving  
Press **[END]** [Out].

- If you select "Last URL" when you have just purchased the FOMA or after "Reset last URL" (p.125) is processed, "Menu" screen appears.
- The URL stored under Last URL is overwritten each time a page is displayed.

## How to View and Operate a Site

### Mobile phone information

When a site or Internet Web page is displayed on the FOMA's screen and you select an item, a mobile phone information disclosure screen may appear.

- The message "Your terminal ID and UIM ID is requested Send?" will appear before mobile phone information is sent. The information is never sent automatically.



When you accept to send the information

Select "YES".

When you want to withhold the information

Select "NO".

To cancel the operation

Press **[END]**.

You can go back to the previous screen before the screen showing mobile phone information.

#### NOTES

- When you send your mobile phone information (such as the manufacturing number of your FOMA terminal, identification number of the FOMA card), it is sent over the Internet to the IP (Information Provider) and may in some cases be disclosed to third parties.

#### Viewing Images on sites

Images are sometimes displayed on sites or a Web page.

- The FOMA terminal can display images in GIF format, JPEG format, PNG format and WBMP format as well as Flash images (p.46). However, some images cannot be displayed.

- When you are receiving an image, "32" is displayed. The image itself appears when the image data has been received.

- You can specify whether images are displayed or not in "Image display" (p.120). If the setting for "Image display" is set from "OFF" to "ON" while a site page is being displayed, "Reload" action will display the "32" image. On the other hand, if you change the setting from "ON" to "OFF", the already received image remains displayed.

#### About the displayed Image icons

- 32 : Displayed when the FOMA is presently receiving an image or "Image display" is set to "OFF"
- 32 : Displayed when the FOMA could not receive an image or cannot display it due to the image format.
- 32 : Displayed when the FOMA cannot receive the image

## Navigating Flash Images

The FOHA supports a Flash Image, incorporated by an animation technique that uses images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download Flash Images and set them in the standby display.

- You can select an item and view another page or select a menu option and perform the corresponding operation. You can also perform operations such as displaying linked pages by selecting the section containing the information.
- Flash images may look different from the appearance of the site when you play the Flash image saved as Save Image (p.115).
- Even when a Flash Image is displayed, it may not run correctly.
- Even if "◀▶" is not displayed at the bottom of the screen, you may be able to operate Flash Images. In addition, you may not use the Neuropointer for some screens using a Flash Image. "▲" is not displayed at the bottom of such screens for which Neuropointer cannot be used.
- If "Image display" is set to "OFF" a Flash Image is not displayed.

- To execute a Flash image again, select "Retry" from the function menu.
- Some Flash images have sound effects. To turn the sound effect off, select "Sound effect" from the function menu, and set to "OFF". When the vibrator is set, it will not vibrate when the sound effect is being played.
- If you do not press any keys for 120 seconds or more during the play, the sound effect pauses. To resume, press any key.
- Saved Flash Images may appear differently from its appearance on the site.

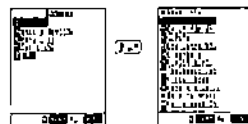
## Selecting a link destination and Item

There are 2 following ways of selecting a menu item:

- This section uses examples of selecting "Menu List" from the iMenu.

### Selecting the item number with a dial key (Direct key selection)

- 1 Press the dial key that indicates the same number as the item number.



Direct key selection may not be used for some sites.

### Selecting the item with the Multi-function key

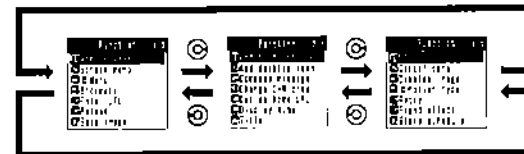
- 1 Press to highlight the item you want to select, and then press [Select].



### If the Function menu spans multiple pages

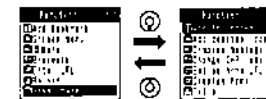
You can move to the previous or the next page by the following operations:

- (or ) [Home]... Go to the previous page
- (or )... Go to the next page



With the bottom item highlighted, press ... Go to the next page (the top item will be highlighted)

With the top item highlighted, press ... Go to the previous page (the bottom item will be highlighted)



- If there is only one page of the function menu, press with the top item highlighted to go to the bottom item, or press with the bottom item highlighted to go to the top item

## Entering characters on a site or Web page

You may find a frame for entering characters or keys to be selected in questionnaires or application forms on sites or Web pages.

- For details, refer to [FOHA i-mode User's Manual].

### Radio button

Only one of the listed items can be selected. indicates the selected item.

### Check box

More than 1 of the listed items can be selected. indicates the selected item.

### Text box

You can enter characters in the box. Select the text box to display a screen allowing you to enter characters.

### Pull-down menu

You can select an item from the list of options. You can see the part of options. Select the pull-down menu to display the multiple hidden options.

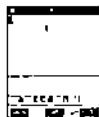
## Entering User ID and Password

Some sites may display the authentication screen (Display varies depending on the sites).

### 1 Select the text box of "User ID".



### 2 Enter your User ID and then press [Set].



### 3 Select the text box of "Password".



### 4 Enter your password and then press [Set].



The entered password appears as '\*'.  
When "Input method" is set to "Mode 2 (2-touch)", enter your password in "Mode 2 (2-touch)" as well. →p.333

### 5 Select "OK".

Starts authenticating the User ID and Password.  
To cancel the operation  
Select "Cancel".

When the authentication fails  
A message "Password is not correct (401)" appears. Select "YES" to try the authentication again.

## Viewing a subsequent screen

<Scroll>

When a site, Msg. Request/Free, I-mode mail or SMS is displayed, the whole contents of list or text may not be displayed. In this case, scroll the screen to view the continuation of the contents.

### When scrolling line

..... Displays a continuation of the list or text by scrolling downward the line.

..... Displays the previous line of the list or text by scrolling upward the line.

You can set the number of scroll lines to 1 line, 3 lines or 5 lines at a time when pressing or . →p.119

### When scrolling screen

(Memo/Check) ..... Displays a continuation of the list or text by scrolling downward the screen.

(Home) ..... Displays the previous page of the list or text by scrolling upward the screen.

## Reloading the Information

<Reload>

You can update the current page to have the latest information.

### 1 Select "Reload" from the function menu while the page is displayed.

#### NOTE

- When "Reload" is processed on the screen notifying you that the data is successfully sent such as on the response of questionnaires, a message appears asking if you want to reload the data. Be aware that if you select "YES" on this screen, the same data will be sent again.

## Displaying the URLs or titles of Web pages

<URL/Title>

You can display and check the URLs or titles of Web pages.

- URLs of up to 512 half-pitch characters each can be displayed. Titles of up to 128 half-pitch characters each can also be displayed. When the page does not have a title, it is displayed as "No title".
- You cannot edit the URLs or titles.

### 1 Select the item you want to check from the function menu while the page is displayed.

To check the title

Select "Title".

To check the URL

Select "URL".

When the screen does not display all the titles or URLs, press to display the cursor, and then move the cursor with to check the information.

When the cursor is displayed, press again and the cursor disappears.  
Select "OK" to go back to the page screen.

## Displaying characters properly

<Change CHR code>

When the characters of pages do not appear properly, you can change the character code to display them again.

### 1 Select "Change CHR code" from the function menu while the page is displayed.

If the characters are not still displayed correctly, repeat the same procedure.

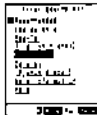
- The characters may not appear correctly even you repeat changing the character code.
- After repeating to change the character code 4 times, the characters will return to the original.
- When you change the character code despite that the characters appear correctly, they may appear improperly.

## Adding a phone number and mail address to the Phonebook

You can add the information such as a phone number and mail address displayed on a site, screen memo or Meg. Request/Free in the Phonebook.

<Example: Registering the phone number that is displayed on a site>

- 1 Display the page that contains the information you want to add, and highlight the phone number to be added.



- 2 Select "Add to phonebook" from the function menu.

A message appears confirming if it is OK to add the phone number to the Phonebook. Select "YES" to add the number to the Phonebook. To cancel the operation, select "NO".

- 3 Adding the number to the Phonebook.

Add the number to the Phonebook. — p.108  
If any name, reading or mail address information is attached to the phone number, it is entered together with the phone number. Enter appropriate items to complete the Phonebook.

- If any name, reading, phone number or mail address information is attached to the information (e.g., phone number, mail address) highlighted in a site page, "Auto search" is displayed in the "Search phonebook" menu (p.116) when adding the information to the Phonebook. You can search for the same name or reading in the Phonebook by pressing "Auto search".
- Some phone numbers or mail addresses may not be added to the Phonebook.
- When the phone number or mail address includes any character that cannot be added to the Phonebook (such as pictograph symbol), the character is displayed as a space.

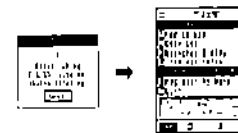
## Displaying a page compatible with SSL <SSL communication>

You can use the FOMA to view sites supporting SSL communication and Web pages starting with "https://" (SSL pages).

## Connecting SSL-compatible pages

Users are not required to perform any special procedures. A message appears when you connect SSL-compatible pages or display a normal Web page from a SSL-compatible page.

- 1 Viewing SSL-compliant pages.



When a SSL page is displayed, "SSL" appears on the screen.  
To cancel SSL session  
Press [Select]  
To cancel the receiving operation of session page  
Press [Out]

- 2 Moving from an SSL page to a normal web page.



To display a normal web page  
Select "Yes".  
SSL communication ends, a normal web page is displayed, and "SSL" icon disappears.

- A message may appear saying, "This site is not certified. Do you connect?" while you are displaying SSL-compatible pages. This message appears when the SSL certificate for the site has expired or is not supported for the site. To connect the site, select "YES" and you can continue displaying the page. However, note that you cannot safely send your personal information (such as credit card number, contact information) on those sites. If you do not want to connect to the page, select "NO". The message "TLS/SSL session was terminated" will appear. Press [Select] to return to the original screen.

## Checking SSL certificates of the current page

You can check the SSL certificate of the SSL-compliant page displayed.

- Using the same procedure, you can check the certificate not only from a site page, but also from the screen memo.

- 1 Display the page of which you want to check the certificate.

On the site page:  
Display a SSL-compliant page — p.47  
On the screen memo:  
Display the stored screen memo — p.59

- 2 Select "Certificate" from the function menu.



The SSL certificate will be displayed, allowing you to check the subject name, issuer, validity period and serial number of the certificate.  
● When the page has more than 1 certificates, press [Left] to find the previous/next certificates.

## Adding a Site to My Menu

If you add a site you frequently visit to My Menu, you will be able to access the site more quickly and easily from the next visit.

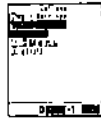
- You can add up to 45 sites to My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be added to My Menu.
- A pay site that can be accessed by selecting "Menu" and "Menu List" is automatically added to My Menu upon subscription.
- Your i-mode password is required to add a site to My Menu.
- For details, refer to [FOMA i-mode User's Manual].

## Changing the i-mode Password

You need a 4-digit i-mode password to store or remove sites from My Menu, to subscribe to or cancel message services or pay i-mode sites, and to set mail preferences.

- The i-mode password is set to "0000" (4 zeros in figures) by default. Use your FOMA terminal to change the i-mode password as preferred.
- Make sure to keep your i-mode password private.
- If you forget your i-mode password, the registered service subscriber must bring the FOMA terminal and a form of identification (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DoCoMo service counter to have it reset. A service representative will reset your i-mode password to "0000".

- 1 Select **[FOMA]** ► "iMenu" ► "English" ► "Options" to select "Change i-mode Password".



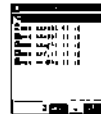
Menu → p.43  
• For details, refer to [FOMA i-mode User's Manual].

## Displaying a Web Page

- You can enter a URL of your choice to display a Web page.
- URLs can contain up to 256 half-pitch alphanumeric characters and symbols.
  - Non i-mode compliant Web pages may not be displayed properly.

### Entering URL to display pages

- 1 Select **[FOMA]** ► "Go to location" ► "Enter URL".  
The screen for entering URLs is displayed.
- 2 Select "Enter New" and then enter the URL.



"http://" is already entered.  
Entering characters → p.298

- 3 Select "OK".



- A message related to the display of the site appears.  
Press **[Select]** or **[OK]** to connect a page of the URL you entered.  
To cancel the operation  
Select "Cancel".  
To cancel the operation of page receiving  
Press **[Out]**.  
If you enter a URL that does not start with "http://" or "https://" or do not enter anything, a message appears saying that the URL is incorrect.

Entering another URL while a Web page is displayed on the screen  
If you select "Enter URL" from function menu while a site or Web page is displayed, you can display another page. The URL of page that is currently being displayed appears in the field where the Internet address is entered. Select the entry field, and enter the URL of the page to be displayed.

- You can conduct various operations from the function menu, such as storing the URL of displayed page in "Bookmark" (p.54) or "Home URL" (p.61) or saving a displayed page as "Screen memo" (p.58).

### Using the URL history to display Web pages

The FOMA stores the 10 most recently visited URLs that you entered in the URL history and displays the list. You can select a URL from the list to display the page.

- 1 Display the screen for entering URLs. →p.64
- 2 Select the URL you want to display.  
To edit the URL you selected  
Select the entry field of Internet addresses and edit the URL.
- 3 Select "OK".

- A message "Page may not be displayed" appears.  
Press **[Select]** or **[OK]** to connect a page of the URL you entered.  
To cancel the operation  
Select "Cancel".  
To cancel the operation of page receiving  
Press **[Out]**.

- When the number of records in the URL history exceeds 10, the oldest record is replaced by the new URL.
- URL records for the same Web page are stored as separate records.

### Deleting records in the URL history

- 1 Highlight the URL history you want to delete, and then select a deletion method from the function menu.

- "Delete this" : Delete one URL in the URL history you highlighted when the function menu is displayed.  
"Delete selected" : Delete URL in the URL history by marking the checkboxes.  
"Delete all" : Delete all the URLs in the URL history. Entering your security code (p.21) is required.

## Using a Bookmark

Adding frequently visited sites to your Bookmark allows you to access those sites quickly and easily.

- You can organize the stored pages, such as changing the titles or classifying your Bookmarks into folders.
- The "Confirm Mail Address" page is already bookmarked at the time of purchase. → p.236

### Adding a Bookmark

<Add Bookmark>

- You can Bookmark up to 100 sites.
- The URL for each stored Bookmark can contain up to 256 half-pitch characters. You cannot add a page of which URL contains over 256 half-pitch characters.
- Some sites cannot be marked with the bookmark function.

#### 1 Display the page you want to Bookmark. Select "Add bookmark" from the function menu. A confirmation message appears.

A confirmation message appears.

#### 2 Select "YES" and then select the folder where you want to keep the Bookmark.

A message appears notifying you that the page is added.  
To cancel adding the Bookmark on the confirmation screen  
Select "NO".

To cancel adding the Bookmark when you select a folder,  
Select **EXIT**.

When 100 Bookmarks have already been stored  
A message appears asking if you want to add new bookmarks after deleting stored ones.  
If you want to store the Bookmark, select "YES". Select a folder, and then select a Bookmark you want to delete.  
To cancel adding the Bookmark, select "NO".

#### NOTE

- The title of a bookmark can contain up to 12 full-pitch characters or 24 half-pitch characters. If the title exceeds 12 full-pitch characters or 24 half-pitch characters, excess characters will be deleted.

### Displaying a bookmarked Web page

Titles of stored Bookmarks are displayed on the Bookmark list screen

- You can select a Bookmark from the "Bookmark" screen to display a marked page.

#### 1 Select **[F2]** "Bookmark".

The folder list screen appears.  
When the page does not contain a title or when you press **[Set]** without entering a title in "Edit title" (p.57), the URL without "http://" or "https://" is displayed.

#### 2 Select a folder.



The Bookmark list screen appears.

#### 3 Select the Bookmark you want to display.



To cancel the operation of page receiving  
Press **[F4]** [Quit].

#### NOTE

- The page title that you displayed from the Bookmark list will appear on the top line of the first page when you next display the Bookmark list screen.

### Using folders to manage Bookmarks

You can use folders to manage your Bookmarks.

- You can add up to 9 folders.
- "Bookmark" folder that is already set by default cannot be deleted or renamed.

#### 1 Display the Bookmark folder list screen.

Bookmark folder list screen → p.40

#### 2 Highlight the folder you want to operate, display the function menu and then select an item.

**To add a folder**  
Select "Add folder" and enter the folder name.  
You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch for the folder name.

**To rename a folder**  
Select "Edit folder name" and rename the folder.  
You can enter up to 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch for the folder name.

**To delete a folder**  
Select "Delete folder".  
Entry of your security code (p.21) is required.

**To delete all Bookmarks**  
Select "Delete all".  
All Bookmarks will be deleted, while the folders will remain. Entering your security code (p.21) is required.

#### NOTE

- You cannot set security for Bookmark folders.

## Managing a Bookmark

You can conduct various Bookmark operations from the function menu.

- 1 Display the Bookmark list screen.
- 2 Highlight the title you want to control to display the function menu, and then select the item.

To move a Bookmark to another folder

Select "Move this".  
Select the destination folder, select the Bookmark you want to move, and then press [Finish].

To change

Select "Edit title" and then enter the new title.  
You can enter up to 12 full-pitch or 24 half-pitch for the title.

To delete a Bookmark

Select the deletion method.

- "Delete this" : Deletes one Bookmark you highlighted.
- "Delete selected" : Deletes Bookmarks by marking the checkboxes.
- "Delete all" : Deletes all the Bookmarks in the folder. Entering your security code (p.21) is required.

To copy a URL of the Bookmark

Select "Copy URL".  
Move the cursor to the first character, use [Left] to select the text, and then move the cursor to the last character.

- You can move "アドレス情報" from "Bookmark" folder to another one, and change and delete the title.
- Copying phonebook data, etc. from other phones deletes "アドレス情報" which is stored in the bookmark.

To check the number of stored Bookmarks

When you check the number of stored Bookmarks for all the folders

Display the function menu on the Bookmark folder list screen

Checking the number of stored Bookmarks for each folder

Display the function menu on the Bookmark list screen of the folder that you want to check

Select "No. of bookmarks" from the function menu

Home URL

## Displaying Sites You View Often Simply

You can display one Web page you view frequently in the Home URL. The "Display home" feature that helps you display a stored page easily can be utilized.

- To utilize "Display home", store the Home URL and then set "Home URL" to "Valid".
- URLs that is stored in the Home URL can contain up to 256 half-pitch characters.

## Storing the Home URL

- 1 Display the page you want to store and select "Set as home URL" from function menu.

A confirmation message appears.

When the Home URL is stored

A message appears asking if you want to overwrite the already set home URL.

- 2 Select "YES".

A message appears notifying you that the Home URL has been stored.

To cancel storing the Home URL

Select "NO".

To save a bookmarked page as the Home URL

In the "Bookmark" list screen (p.200), highlight the bookmark to be saved.

To save the page from the URL History

In the URL history screen (p.200), highlight the URL history to be saved.

Select "Set as home URL" from the function menu.

## Setting the Home URL

You can set the Home URL to display the home.

- 1 Select [F10] ▶ "I-mode settings" ▶ "Home URL".

The Home URL field displays a URL that is stored as the Home URL.

When the Home URL is not stored

Select the Home URL field and then enter the URL you want to store.

- Up to 256 half-pitch characters can be entered as the Home URL.
- When no URL is stored as the Home URL, the Home URL field only displays "http://".

- 2 Select "Valid".

When you do not display home

Select "Invalid".

## Displaying a page stored as the Home URL <Display home>

- 1 Press [Home] while the standby display is displayed.

To cancel the operation of page receiving

Select [Out].

Displaying the Home URL page while a page is displayed.

Display the function menu on the site and select "Display home".

Displaying the Home URL page using the I-mode menu.

Select [F10] ▶ "Go to location" ▶ "Display home".

NOTE

- When the "Home URL" setting is "Invalid", you cannot use any operations for Display home.



## Saving a Displayed Site

Screen memo enables you to store a page that has once been viewed as a screen memo in your FOMA terminal, convenient for searching result such as public transportation guides or the date received screen of melody/i-motion. The feature saves the screen as it was displayed so you find it useful to check the information later.

- The FOMA can store up to 100 screen memos. The number of screen memos that can be saved varies within the range of 3 to 100, depending on the data volume of the page you save.
- You can store a schedule by performing reference entry of a schedule while viewing the screen memo. → p.335
- When the FOMA card is replaced with another one or the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on with the FOMA card removed, you will not be able to display screen memos with melodies, images, i-motions, Chara-dens or downloaded dictionaries. When the original FOMA card is inserted, you will be able to display the screen memos. → p.19

### Saving a screen memo

- 1 Display the page you want to save. Select "Screen memo" from the function menu.

A confirmation message appears.

- 2 Select "YES".

A message appears notifying you that the page is properly saved. To cancel saving the page, select "NO".

When no more screen memos can be saved

A message appears asking if you want to save new screen memos after deleting screen memos. To save screen memos, select "YES" to select the screen memos to be deleted. To cancel the saving operation, select "NO".



- Any text you enter or any settings you make on the page are not saved in the screen memo.
- If you save a screen of the SSL-supporting page, the SSL certificate of the page will also be saved. → p.48
- The size of screen memo can save up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch characters. All characters that exceed this limit are discarded.
- In the screen memo, you can save not only characters, but images, Flash images and other data, as well as data receiving screens for i-motions, melodies, Chara-dens, etc. However, the data received screen for some i-motions such as i-motions for which a replay restriction is set, streaming-type i-motions, and i-motions that consist of incomplete data cannot be saved as a screen memo.
- If you have saved images, etc. in the screen memo, you can also save them in the FOMA terminal. → p.114
- When you save a page that is previously stored, it will be saved as a new screen memo instead of being rewritten over the previous page.

### Displaying a screen memo

Titles of stored screen memos are shown on the screen memo list screen.

- 1 Select "Screen memo".

Screen memo list screen → p.41

When the screen memo does not contain a title or when you press without entering a title in "Edit title" (p.60), it displays as "No title".

- 2 Select the title you want to display.



The Screen memo details screen appears. If you press while the screen memo is displayed, the previous/next screen memo can be displayed.

To check a URL of the stored page

Display the function menu and select "URL".

You cannot select "URL" on the screen that notifies you of the completion of data received.



- Even when you are displaying a page saved as a screen memo, the page does not connect to the i-mode session. Because the information shown in a screen memo is the information that was on the page when you saved it, the information may be different from the latest information.
- When a screen memo of SSL-compliant page is displayed, "SSL" appears on the screen. → p.48

### Managing a screen memo

You can protect an important screen memo or change the title of a screen memo.

- You can protect up to 50 screen memos. The maximum number of screen memos that you can protect varies from the data volume of the screen memos.

<Example: Use the Screen memo list screen to control operations>

- 1 Display the Screen memo list screen. → P.XXX

- 2 Highlight the title you want to control to display the function menu, and then select the item.

To protect/unprotect a screen memo

Select "Protect ON/OFF".

Unprotected screen memos are protected, while protected screen memos are unprotected.

→ appears on the left side of the title of a protected screen memo.

To change the title

Select "Edit title" and enter the new title.

You can enter up to 11 full-pitch or 22 half-pitch for the title.

To delete a screen memo

Select the deletion method.

"Delete this" : Delete one screen memo you highlighted.

"Delete selected" : Delete screen memo by marking the checkbox.

"Delete all" : Delete all the screen memos. Entering your security code (p.21) is required.

To check the number of stored screen memos

Select "No. of memos".

When you use the Screen memo details screen to control operations

To select "Protect ON/OFF", "Edit title" and "Delete", you can also use the function menu on the Screen memo details screen. (p.23)

- Display the screen memo you want to control to display the function menu, and then select an item.
- Select "Delete" to delete displayed screen memos.

## Downloading an Image/Melody from a Site

You can register and save information, such as melody, image, frame, phone number, mail address and Chara-den, that appears on sites, Msg. Request/Free, etc. in your FOMA terminal.

- You can specify a saved for the ring tone setting.
- You can set an saved image or animation to the standby display or wake-up display.
- When the FOMA card is replaced with another one or the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on with the FOMA card removed, screen memos and Msg. Request/Free with melodies and images, etc. cannot be displayed. You will be able to display the screen memos and Msg. Request/Free when the original FOMA card is inserted. → p.19
- Starting up I-appli from a site → p.77
- Downloading i-motion → p.98 and 190
- To download Chara-den from the site or screen memo and then save it → p.94

## Downloading an Image from a Site or Message

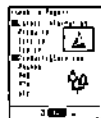
You can save an image displayed on a site, screen memo, I-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free and set it for the standby screen.

<Example: Saving an Image displayed on a site>

- 1 Display the page which includes the image you want to save, and select "Save image" from the function menu.

You cannot use "Save image" on the function menu if there is no image on the screen of the displayed site, or when the "Image display" setting (p.120) is set to "OFF".

- 2 Select the image you want to save.



The selected image should be framed with .  
A message appears asking whether or not to save the image.  
To save the image, select "YES" and specify the folder to save the image. A message will appear notifying you that the image has been saved.

If the number of saved images exceeds the maximum limit  
A message appears asking whether or not you save the image after deleting unnecessary ones. To save the image, select "YES" and then select the images you want to delete.

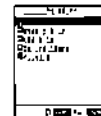
To cancel saving the image  
Select "NO".

- You can also set an image to the standby display on the screen displayed after the saving operation.
- Images can be saved as half-pitch alphanumeric file name (but, up to 36 characters in half-pitch). If a file name is not specified, the characters from the last "?" and "." in the downloaded URL will be a file name. Otherwise, images will be saved as "imagexxx" (xxx: a three-digit number). The last three-digit number of a file name is a serial number to distinguish same file names.
- Images that satisfy the following conditions are saved as frame images:
  - Transparent GIF file
  - File with ".gif" extension
  - Image whose size is "352×288 dots", "240×269 dots", "176×144 dots" or "128×96 dots"
- Some images may not be saved.

## Downloading a Melody from a Site

You can save a melody stored on a site or I-mode mail and set it to the ring tone.

- 1 Display the site that allows you to download a melody, and then select the melody.



When you select the melody, it starts downloading.  
When the download is completed, the screen will notify you of the completion of data received is displayed.

- 2 Select "Save".



A message appears asking if it is OK to save the melody. Select "YES" to save the melody. A message appears notifying you that the melody has been saved.  
Number of saved melodies reaches the maximum limit.

A message appears asking whether or not you save the melody after deleting unnecessary ones. To save the melody, select "YES" and then select the melodies you want to delete.

To cancel saving the melody  
Select "NO".

Select "Play" to reply the melody.  
Select "Property" to display the melody information.

- You can also make the ring tone setting on the screen displayed after the saving operation.
- Some downloaded melodies may have the preset part to be played. If you play such melody, all parts of the melody is played, but if you set the melody to ring tone, only the preset part is played.
- The downloaded melody may not be played properly.
- The URL of the screen that notifies you of the completion of data received is not recorded as "Last URL". In this case, "Last URL" applies the URL of the screen that was displayed before the screen that notifies you of the completion of data received.
- The title of the saved melody appears at the top of the list. If the melody has no title, it is represented as "No title".
- Melodies can be saved as half-pitch alphanumeric file name (but, up to 36 characters in half-pitch). If a file name is not specified, the characters from the last "?" and "." in the downloaded URL will be a file name. Otherwise, melodies will be saved as "melodyxxx" (xxx: a three-digit number).  
The last three-digit number of a file name is a serial number to distinguish same file names.
- If "Warner mode" (p.135) has been set, a message appears asking whether you want to play the downloaded melody even during the warner mode.
- Melodies cannot be played during a call.



- You cannot use the Mail To function if you already have 10 items of draft mail.
- You may not be able to use the Mail To function when 2 mails or more addresses are displayed consecutively.
- This function only supports e-mail addresses up to 50 half-pitch characters long.

### Accessing a displayed URL page

You can view the Web page for a URL displayed on a site or an e-mail message, or using the URL registered item.

Select the displayed URL.



- Notes**
- URLs are displayed in various ways, depending on the site.
  - You can also display the page of the URL that starts with "http://" or "https://" which is displayed in the message of mail or Msg. Request/Free.

### Making the i-mode Settings

#### Setting the number of scroll lines <Scroll>

Default setting | 1 line

The feature can allow you to specify how many lines the screen will scroll to display when you press on the site screen, screen memo, or the Msg. Request/Free screen.

Select [F10] ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "Scroll".

- 1 line : Scrolls line by line.
- 3 lines : Scrolls 3 lines at a time.
- 5 lines : Scrolls 5 lines at a time.

#### Setting the character size <Character size>

Default setting | Standard

You can change the character size of the site screen and the Msg. Request/Free details screen to increase the number of characters that can be displayed on the screen or to enlarge the character size to make the screen easier to view.

- When you change the character size, the size of characters and pictographs as well as the character size of site entry or options. The size of images and lines is not changed.

Select [F10] ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "Character size".

- Standard : Displaying in the standard character size
- Small : Making the character size smaller
- Large : Making the character size larger

#### Setting image display <Image display>

Default setting | ON

You can specify image display setting for the site screens, screen memos or the Msg. Request/Free. When you select OFF, the page can be displayed more quickly as the image is not retrieved.

Select [F10] ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "Image display".

- ON : Display the image.
- OFF : Does not display the image.  
The icon is displayed substitute for the image.

- By selecting "image display" from the function menu while browser is displayed, you can specify whether or not the image is displayed. In this case, the above setting is changed.
- If "image display" is set to "OFF", no flash images will appear.

#### Setting sound effects of a site or screen memo <Sound effect setting>

Default setting | ON

You can set whether or not sound effect of the Flash Image on a site screen or screen memo will ring.

Select [F10] ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "Sound effect setting".

- ON : Sets the sound effect of the Flash image to ring.
- OFF : Sets the sound effect of the Flash image not to ring.

- The setting changes only the sound effect of the Flash image. It does not apply to the paired or attached melody.
- You can also select ON/OFF by selecting "Sound effect setting" from the function menu when the site screen or screen memo is displayed. This will also change the above settings.

## Setting the waiting time for connection <Connection timeout>

Default setting 60 seconds

Set the waiting time until the connection is automatically cut when you try to connect to a site or perform "I-mode checking" yet there is no response.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Connection setting" ► "Connection timeout".

2 Select the connection timeout.

- 60 seconds : If there is no response within 60 seconds, the connection will be automatically cut.
- 90 seconds : If there is no response within 90 seconds, the connection will be automatically cut.
- Unlimited : The connection is not cut automatically.

● The connection is not cut automatically when "Unlimited" is selected. However, the communications may be disrupted depending on the radio wave conditions.

## Changing host settings with I-mode <Host selection>

Normally, you do not need to change the settings.

Default setting I-E-N (I-mode)

You can set access points for using services other than I-mode service. When no "I-mode" access point is set, I-mode and I-mode mail service cannot be used. Also, I-ppml communication may not be used on some sites.

### About the ISP communication

- You can access other information service providers (ISPs) by switching the access point of the FOMA terminal.
- Packet communication fee is charged for the ISP communication.
- ※ Additional sign-up for DoCoMo is not required.

### About the sign-up for information service providers

- To start ISP communication, you need to sign up for an information service provider. For information about service details (accessing sites, Internet connection, mail functions, etc.) and the sign-up procedure, please contact the providers.
- Depending on the contents of the service provided by the ISP, an additional fee may be charged, which will not be included in DoCoMo's billing.
- Some sites you browse may notify the site provider of the information such as your phone number.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Connection setting" ► "Host selection".

2 Highlight <Not stored>, press [Edit], and then enter your security code.

About security codes → p.21  
Up to 10 access points can be added as the user defined hosts.  
Select "I-E-N" to make the host setting to "I-mode".

3 Enter "Title", "Host name" and "Host address", and then press [Finish].

- Title : You can enter up to 9 full-pitch or 18 half-pitch characters.
- Host name : You can enter up to 30 half-pitch characters.
- Host address : You can enter up to 89 half-pitch characters.

"Finish" is not displayed unless "Title", "Host name" and "Host address" are all entered.

### NOTES

- "User defined host" can be changed by using the same procedure as when added.
- To delete an added "User defined host", highlight the host you want to delete, and then select "Delete" from the function menu.
- You cannot make the settings during I-mode or ISP session.

## Checking/setting the certificate

You can set whether you want to check the contents of SSL certificate or display the SSL compatible pages.

## Composing/Sending I-mode mail

You can check the contents of SSL certificate.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Connection setting" ► "Certificate".

2 Highlight the certificate you want to check and select "Certificate" from the function menu.

3 Check the certificate.



Subject name, Author, validity period and serial number of the certificate will be displayed.

## Switching the valid/invalid setting of the certificate

Default setting All "Valid"

You can switch the valid/invalid setting of SSL certificate.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Connection setting" ► "Certificate".
- 2 Highlight the certificate you want to make the validity setting, and then select "Valid/Invalid".

You will be able to switch the validity of the certificate. When a valid certificate is chosen, it will become invalid, and likewise, if an invalid certificate is chosen, it will become valid.

Certificate is valid : The icon "" is displayed.  
 Certificate is invalid : The icon "" is displayed.

- When "Invalid" is set to the certificate, SSL-compatible pages that maintain the certificate can no longer be displayed.

## Checking the contents of I-mode settings <Checking I-mode settings>

You can check the contents specified in "I-mode settings".

I-mode Settings	Displayed Contents
Scroll	Displays number of scroll lines on screens
Char. size	Displays character size on screens
Image	Displays setting of image display on screens
I-motion auto play	Indicates whether or not I-motion is automatically played.
I-motion	Displays I-motion type to be obtained
Msg. auto display	Indicates whether or not received Msg. Request/Free is automatically displayed.
Auto melody play	Indicates whether or not melody is automatically played when Msg. Request/Free is received
Melody/Msg	Displays setting of melody played on Msg. Request/Free
Msg. I-display	Displays number of lines displayed on Msg. Request/Free screens
Home URL	Displays setting of home URL
Sound effect	Displays setting of sound effect for Flash images.

- 1 Select (I-mode settings) ► "I-mode settings" ► "Check settings"  
 Items and contents of "I-mode settings" are displayed.

## Resetting the Last URL <Reset Last URL>

You can reset the stored Last URL. Reset Last URL will be replaced by the URL on the IMenu screen.

- 1 Select (I-mode settings) ► "I-mode settings" ► "Reset Last URL".  
 A message appears asking if it is OK to reset the Last URL. Select "YES" to reset the Last URL.

## Resetting I-mode settings to the default <Reset settings>

You can reset the "I-mode settings" to the default settings.  
 Reset items and subsequent status are as follows:

Items to be set	When the settings are reset
Scroll	1 line
Character size	Standard
Image display	Off
I-motion auto play	Off
I-motion type	Normal type
Message auto display	Msg. Req preferred
Auto melody play	Off
Played melody message	Valid
Message list display	2 lines
Home URL	Invalid, Home URL reset (http://)
Sound effect setting	Off
Last URL	URL of the IMenu screen

- 1 Select (I-mode settings) ► "I-mode settings" ► "Reset settings" and enter your security code.

About security codes → p.21  
 A message appears asking if it is OK to reset the settings. Select "YES" to reset the settings.

## ● Messaging

Mail Functions for a FOMA Terminal .....	XXX
Displays of Folders and Mails .....	XXX
Displaying Mail Menu .....	XXX
■ Composing I-mode Mail	
Composing and Sending I-mode Mail .....	XXX
Composing and Sending a Deco-mail .....	XXX
Attaching a File to an I-mode Mail .....	XXX
Sending Photo During Phone Conversation .....	XXX
Composing I-mode Mail Using Various Data .....	XXX
Composing I-mode Mail Using Mail-connected i-Eppis .....	XXX
■ Receiving and Operating I-mode Mail	
Receiving I-mode Mail .....	XXX
Displaying New I-mode Mail .....	XXX
Receiving I-mode Mail Selectively .....	XXX
Capturing I-motion through I-motion Mail .....	XXX
Inquiring About New I-mode Mail in the Center .....	XXX
Replying to I-mode Mail .....	XXX
Forwarding I-mode Mail to Other Addresses .....	XXX
Storing the Mail Address in the Phonebook .....	XXX
Capturing Melody from I-mode Mail .....	XXX
Displaying the Image Attached to a Mail .....	XXX
■ Operating Mail Boxes	
Displaying Mails in Inbox/Outbox .....	XXX
■ Using Sent/Received Address Record	
Using Sent/Received Address Record .....	XXX
Setting the Mail Functions .....	XXX
■ Using SMS	
Composing and Sending SMS .....	XXX
Receiving SMS .....	XXX
Setting SMS .....	XXX
Saving SMS in the FOMA Card .....	XXX
■ Using the Messaging Service	
Receiving a Message .....	XXX
Inquiring about Received Message at the Center .....	XXX
Displaying Messages in a Message Box .....	XXX

## Mail Functions for a FOMA Terminal

With FOMA terminal, you can use both i-mode mail and SMS. To use i-mode mail, you need to subscribe to "i-mode" service. See p.152 and p.177 for sending and receiving i-mode mail.

- Transmitting SMS (transmitting text data) between FOMA terminals does not require i-mode subscription. See p.193 and p.196 for sending and receiving SMS.

### About i-mode mail

i-mode subscribers can exchange mail messages with other i-mode terminals (included mova) as well as with PCs via the Internet.

Upon sign-up, you will be assigned an address as follows:

If you are a new i-mode subscriber

The part followed by the "@" symbol will be randomly chosen alphanumeric characters. Please check your mail address after i-mode sign-up is completed.

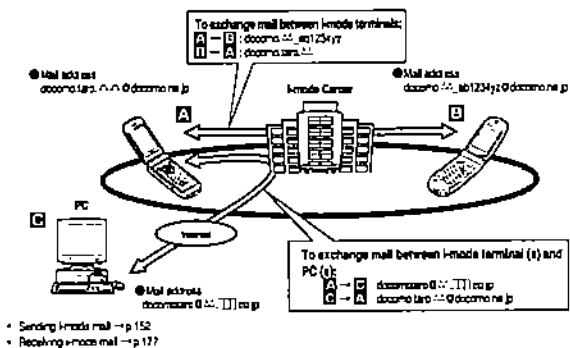
Example: abc1234~789yz@docomo.ne.jp

☛ Checking your mail address → p.236 for details

☛ Menu screen → "English" → (A), Option → (B), Mail Settings → "Confirm Mail Address"

- If you are sending mail to an i-mode terminal (included mova), you only need the part before "@".

- To send mail to an i-mode terminal from the regular e-mail system, you need the entire mail address including "@docomo.ne.jp".



- Sending i-mode mail → p.152
- Receiving i-mode mail → p.177

### Selecting the mail to receive

You can check the subjects for mail you received at the i-mode Center and select which mail you want to download to your i-mode terminal. You can also delete mail at the i-mode Center before downloading. → p.166

### Changing your mail address

You can change the part before the "@" symbol of your mail address to your preferred alphanumeric string (e.g. docomo.taro\_ab1234yz@docomo.ne.jp). → p.236

### Registering a secret code

If you are using your phone number for your mail address, you can register a 4-digit secret code. Since mail without this secret code entered is rejected, you can avoid receiving spam mail. → p.239

### Using your phone number for your mail address (resetting mail address)

You can change your mail address to "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp". → p.238

### Checking your mail address

You can check your current mail address. → p.236

### Receiving/rejecting mail

You can setup whether or not to receive/reject specific incoming mail through one of the following procedures:

- ① Receiving mail with specific domain
  - You can specify the companies you want to receive mail from, from the following: au, Vodafone, TU-KA, DDI Pocket
  - When you receive mail that is not from one of the companies above, you can receive mail from the domain(s) you specified. → p.241
  - ☛ : You will receive every mail from NTT DoCoMo's i-mode, i-shot, Charge Notification Service, e-billing bill notification mail, and mail from M-stage Visual Net.
- ② Receiving and rejecting specific mail
  - You can specify the addresses you want to receive/reject mail. → p.241
- ③ Receiving and rejecting i-mode mail only
  - You can specify to receive (reject mail via the Internet)/reject only i-mode mail from i-mode terminals. → p.241
- ④ Rejecting i-mode mails from over-frequent senders.
  - The 200th and later i-mode mails sent from the same i-mode terminal (including mova) in one day are rejected. Because the default setting is "Reject", you do not need to make additional setup if you want to reject those mails. → p.243
- ⑤ Rejecting/receiving unsolicited advertising mail
  - You can reject advertising mail distributed without the consent of the recipients. These mail has "未承諾広告 (Unauthorized advertisement)" at the beginning of the mail subject field. Because the default setting is "Reject", you do not need to set this function if you want to reject these mails. (By law, senders of unsolicited advertising mail are required to include 未承諾広告 (Unauthorized advertisement) (6 full-pitch characters) at the beginning of the mail subject field). → p.243
  - ☛ : You cannot setup "Receive selected domain", "Receive selected mail", "Reject selected mail", "Receive only i-mode mail" and "Reject only i-mode mail" at the same time.

### Checking mail settings

You can check mail settings currently specified. → p.243

### Limiting size of mail to receive

You can limit size of i-mode mail to receive. → p.240

### Deactivating mail functions

You can deactivate mail functions at the i-mode Center. → p.244



**Avoiding spam mail**

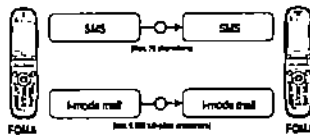
To avoid receiving spam mail, we recommend you take the above mentioned measures such as changing mail address (p.224), specifying mail address to receive or reject, selected mail (p.241).

**SMS address**

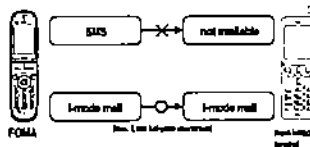
SMS address is your "mobile phone number".

**3 types of mail transmission****FOMA terminal → FOMA terminal**

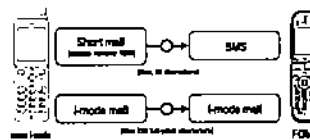
You can exchange SMS only with FOMA terminal.

**FOMA terminal → mova i-mode terminal**

To send messages from FOMA terminal to mova i-mode terminal, use i-mode mail.

**mova i-mode terminal → FOMA terminal**

Short mail\* sent from mova i-mode terminal will be received as SMS at FOMA terminal.



- \* Short mail is a mail service that allows you to exchange message texts between mova terminals.
- \* You cannot send Short mail from FOMA terminal even if you dial the access number 1635.
- \* When FOMA terminal receives Short mail from mova i-mode terminal, the mail will be converted to SMS.

**Number of characters you can transmit**

The following chart shows maximum number of characters you can send/receive by i-mode mail and SMS.

**i-mode mail**

Category	Full-pitch (e.g. kanji, hiragana and pictograph)	Half-pitch (e.g. alphabet, number and katakana)
Subject	15	30
Mail address	-	50
Message	3,000*	10,000*

- \* In the event a file such as melody, image and rington is attached, the number of characters available for transmission will be reduced. For Deco-mail, the number of characters available to send is less than half the specified number.

**SMS**

Category	Full-pitch (e.g. kanji, hiragana and pictograph)	Half-pitch (e.g. alphabet, number and katakana)
Mail address	-	70 (numbers only)
Message	70	160*

- \* You can use 170 characters in a message only if all characters are half-pitch (excluding symbols such as . [ ] | ! , ; and -). You are allowed to use 70 characters if both half-pitch and full-pitch characters are used in a message.

**<i-mode mail>**

- Although i-mode mail message capacity is 5,000 full-pitch (10,000 bytes) characters, these numbers reduce depending on the size of attachments.
- If the length of i-mode mail message exceeds the limit, "?" or "!!" will appear at the end and the excess characters will be deleted automatically.
- You can only send a maximum of 2,000 full-pitch characters at a time as an i-mode mail message to a mova i-mode terminal. The image file attached must be in the JPEG format, and only one file can be attached at a time (10,000 bytes max.). If you try to send a different format of file, it is only deleted. When an attached image is in correct specification, it is received by a receiving terminal as i-shot mail. The maximum size of a sent message is 184 characters in full pitch. If the receiver sets his/her terminal to divide received mail, you can send him/her a maximum of 2,000 characters in full pitch including the i-shot URL (a place where the image is stored).
- If the subject of i-mode mail subject is longer than the limit, the characters in excess are deleted.
- Except when exchanging mail between i-mode terminals (included mova), do not use half-pitch katakana and pictographs. These characters may not appear properly.

**<SMS>**

- Half-pitch katakana used in SMS message may not appear properly.

**In the event you are not able to receive mail**

Mail received at the i-mode Center will immediately be sent to your i-mode terminal. However, if your i-mode terminal is not turned on, out of the service area, or the "Receive option setting" (p.224) is set to "ON", your mail will be retained at the i-mode Center. Mails kept at the i-mode Center will be resent to you up to 3 times in certain intervals. You can also make specific settings to select which mail to download from the i-mode Center to your terminal.

**NOTE**

**i-mode mail**

Retention period and mail capacity at the i-mode Center are as follows.

	Number of messages	Retention period
i-mode mail	207-1000 (up to 25KB)	720 hours

- Mail will automatically be deleted at the end of the retention period.
- Maximum number of mail messages that the i-mode Center is able to store for you depends on the size of data. When the number of mail messages reaches maximum, the i-mode Center stops receiving mail and returns incoming mail to the sender with an error message. In this case, is displayed in your i-mode terminal. However, if "Receive option setting" (p.224) is set to "ON", does not appear even when the number of mail messages reaches maximum.
- You can download the mail messages stored at the i-mode Center by "Check new message" (p.160) or Receive option (p.166) functions. When you download new mail, you can also download other mails and Msg. Request/Free stored at the Center.
- When you download mail from the i-mode Center to your i-mode terminal, that mail is deleted from the Center and saved in your i-mode terminal.
- The i-mode Center may not accept mail that requires an unusually large amount of memory.
- When you set to "Suspend mail functions" (p.244), the i-mode Center will not store new mail.
- **<SMS>**
- Retention period for SMS at the SMS Center is 72 hours. You can specify a retention period for SMS that have been sent out by "SMS validity period" (p.229).
- SMS will be automatically deleted after its retention period expires.
- You can download the SMS stored at the SMS Center by "Check new SMS" (p.197).
- When you download SMS from the SMS Center to your FOMA terminal, that mail is deleted from the Center and saved in your FOMA terminal.  
The SMS you have downloaded to your FOMA terminal can be moved/copied to FOMA card. → p.215

■ Other useful functions

■ Mail with file (s) attached

• Mail with melody attached

You can send and receive melody downloaded from an Internet website or homepage by attaching it to your i-mode mail (you cannot send melody of which mail attachments and exports from the terminal are prohibited).

- Sending melody as an i-mode mail attachment → p.162
- Receiving an i-mode mail with melody attached → p.168

• Mail with image (s) attached

You can send and receive a still images taken with a built-in camera or images downloaded from an Internet website or homepage by attaching it to your i-mode mail (you cannot send images of which mail attachments and exports from the terminal are prohibited). The FOMA terminal can attach and display images in GIF format and JPEG format.

- Sending image(s) as an i-mode mail attachment → p.162
- Receiving an i-mode mail with image(s) attached → p.187

■ Transmitting i-shot

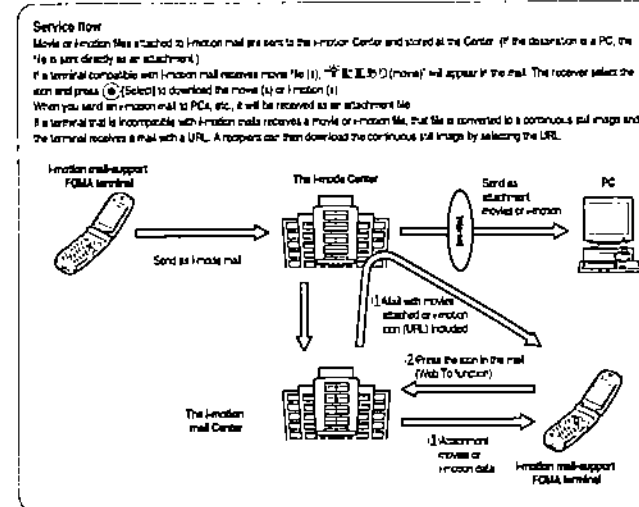
Still images taken with a built-in camera can be sent to i-mode terminals (including mova), PCs, and non-DeCoMo mobile phones as attachment files. However, when sending the images to i-mode mova terminals, they will not be sent as an attachment file, but a URL where the image can be viewed and its viewing expiration date will be automatically attached and sent. The recipient can see the image by using the URL and executing the Web To function. The maximum size of a message that can be sent to a mova terminal is 184 full pitch characters (369 bytes). If you attach more than one image, the attachment files will be deleted, and only the message will be sent.

- Sending i-mode mail with an image attached → p.162
- Receiving i-mode mail with an image attached → p.187

■ i-motion mail

You can send and receive movies taken with a FOMA terminal or an i-motion downloaded from an Internet website or homepage as an i-motion mail (you cannot send images of which mail attachments and exports from terminal are prohibited).

- Sending i-motion mail → p.162
- Receiving i-motion mail → p.190



■ Deco-mail

You can send/receive interesting decorative mail. You can create your own i-mode mail form by changing font size or background color or pasting images in your message. (If you receive mail from a PC, it may include decorations not supported by the i-mode terminal. In that case the i-mode terminal may not operate as does the PC.)

- Creating/sending Deco-mail → p.171
- Deco-mail-support terminal: 900i series

■ Broadcasting mail

One i-mode mail message can be sent to 5 different addresses at one time. → p.157

■ CC and BCC transmission

You can use TO, CC and BCC to address for your i-mode mail in the same way as mail programs for PC. → p.157  
However, you cannot send mail if you specify no address for TO.

**Mail**

**iMail with melody/mail with images**

- You cannot attach melodies/images that are not authorized to be sent out from a FOMA terminal.
- Photos filmed with a built-in camera can be sent even if "File restriction" is set to "Restricted", but the recipient cannot output the received files to anywhere.
- If i-mode mail is sent to an i-mode terminal of the mova service, all files but an image are deleted. Please be sure that you can send only one image file at a time and that the file must be in the JPEG format (10,000 bytes max.).

**i-motion mails**

- You cannot send movies/i-motion that are not authorized to be attached to mail or sent out from FOMA terminal.
- Movies filmed with a built-in camera can be sent even if "File restriction" is set to "Restricted", but the recipient cannot output the received files to anywhere.
- Retention period and capacity for your mail at the i-motion Center are as follows:

	Maximum capacity	Retention period
i-motion	15 files	7 days

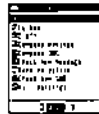
- i-motion will be automatically deleted at the end of the retention period.
- When the number of files exceeds a maximum allowable number for storage at the i-motion Mail Center, the center does not accept any more i-motion mail, instead sending back to the sender an error message along with an error mail.
- When you download i-motion from the i-motion Center to your FOMA terminal, that i-motion is deleted from the Center.

**iMail broadcasting**

- The communication charge for broadcasting mail is equal to sending mail to 1 address. However, the charge will be increased in proportion to the amount address data you have added.

**Displaying Mail Menu**

1 Press **[MAIL]** while the stand-by screen is displayed.



Menu Item	Description	See page
<b>[1]</b> Inbox	Displays the screen of the received folder list. In i-mode, mails can be sorted to folders. Mails received using mail connected i-cp ppd are sorted to the dedicated folder. You can check lists and details of the received i-mode mails and SMS by opening these folders.	p. XXX
<b>[2]</b> Outbox	Displays the sent folder list screen. Mails sent using mail-connected i-cp ppd are sorted to the dedicated folder. You can check lists and details of the sent i-mode mails and SMS by opening these folders.	p. XXX
<b>[3]</b> Draft	Displays the saved mail list screen. You can check i-mode mails and SMS that are saved temporarily by opening Draft.	p. XXX
<b>[4]</b> Compose Message	Displays the screen for composing i-mode Mail.	p. XXX
<b>[5]</b> Compose SMS	Displays the screen for composing SMS.	p. XXX
<b>[6]</b> Check new message	Checks new i-mode mails stored in the i-mode Center to receive them.	p. XXX
<b>[7]</b> Receive option	Checks the titles of i-mode mails stored in the i-mode Center to select mails to be received, and deletes i-mode mails stored in the i-mode Center.	p. XXX
<b>[8]</b> Check new SMS	Checks new SMS stored in the SMS Center to receive them.	p. XXX
<b>[9]</b> Mail settings	Displays the mail setting screen. Settings related to i-mode mails and SMS can be made using this item.	p. XXX

## Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

Follow the procedure below to compose and send a new i-mode mail message.

- Attaching a melody, an image, a movie, or i-motion → p.162
- You can decorate your message text by changing the color and size of characters in your message text, giving motion to the text, and inserting images and lines. About Deco-mail → p.171

### 1 Select [COM] ► "Compose message".



[COM] is displayed on the Standby display.

### 2 Select "To", type in the recipient and press [Set].



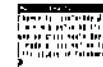
For an address, you can enter up to 50 half-pitch characters.  
Entering characters → p.168

### 3 Select "Subject", type the subject and press [Set].



You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters for subject.  
Entering characters → p.168

### 4 Select "Msg", type the message and press [Set].




You can enter up to 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters for a message. You can linefeed in the message. "J" will be counted as a full-pitch character. A space is also counted as 1 character.

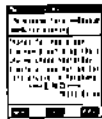
#### To put a common phrase in a message

Select "Common phrases" from the function menu. Choose a common phrase you want from the Common phrases folder.  
Common phrases → p.322

#### To quote data in a Phonebook into a message

Select "Quote phonebook" from the function menu and choose information you want to quote.  
Quote phonebook → p.313  
Press  [Set] to get back to the New mail screen.

## 5 Check the message and press [Send].



An animation appears, telling you that the I-mode mail is being sent. Press "OK" to get back to the Mail menu display.  
You can do the same by letting the Preview screen appear and selection "Send" from the function menu there. No mail can go unless you invoke the Preview screen at least once.

**To cancel transmission**  
Press [Send] longer than a second.  
Whether you can cancel or not depends on timing.

**To change your message text**  
Display the Preview screen. Press [Set] to go back to the New mail screen to edit the message.  
Press [Edit] to return to the New message screen, and you can edit the message. After editing, press [Set] to go back to the Preview screen. To send, press [Send].

### About a screen while you enter I-mode mail message

While you input I-mode mail message, the screen is displayed as follows.

Message mail screen		Mail message input screen displays the message you confirmed.
Character input info screen		Character entry (edit) screen displays character entry area, operation guidance area and information display area. Characters that have not been confirmed yet are displayed here. You can use the prediction function to erase the characters on the character entry (edit) screen → p.307
		Switching character input method Press [Mode] for 1 second or more in the character entry (edit) screen. About the character input method → p.324

The following screens and the function menus shown at the message input screen.



- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| Deco-mail     | Decomposes the message to compose Deco-mail → p.171  |
| Undo          | Returns the entry of a character and message decomposition to one step before.   |
| Preview       | Displays the message preview screen.   |
| Property      | Displays the file name and file size of an image inserted in the message.  |
| Change window | Switches the screen between reference screen and message input screen while entering message of Reply with ref. mail → p.184 |

For other functions, refer to p.256

### Composing I-mode mail from the Phonebook display

Search a mail address you need in a Phonebook. Display it and press [Edit].



For the details of search in a Phonebook → p.118  
The mail address on display removed from the Phonebook is placed in the address box on the New mail screen.

### Saving unfinished I-mode mail

During composing mail, select "Save" from the function menu.  
The mail message you have been writing will be saved in Draft. You can save up to 10 (including SMS) mail messages. You can open this message later and edit it needed before sending it.

### Re-editing and sending I-mode mail

You can send I-mode mail you sent before or you've kept unsent after re-editing it.  
Take notice that if I-mode mail you're going to re-edit has an attached file, it is kept with the mail, not deleted.  
On the Details display for sent mail to be re-edited, select "Edit" from the function menu. Edit the recipient, subject, and message. Then send it.

- When the number of sent mail stored in your FOMA terminal (a total of I-mode mail and SMS) exceeds the maximum limit (p.21), the stored sent mail, from the oldest, is automatically overwritten by the current mail. Protected sent mail, however, is not overwritten. It is advisable to protect sent mail you want to keep → p.211
- When "Keypad dial lock" (p.205) is set, you can use recipients in the Phonebook, Sent address record and Dialing record only, or have to use the redialing function.
- Half-pitch katakana and pictographs included in subject or message may not be displayed properly. Do not use these characters for mail transmission other than between I-mode terminals.
- If you press [Edit], [Set] without sending the mail, a message appears to ask you if you want to erase the content and end the edit session. If you select "YES", all data you have entered will be erased. If you do not want typed characters to be deleted, select "NO". The display gets back to the original.
- Radio wave condition may cause insufficient character display for the receiver. Moreover, "Transmission failed" may be displayed even if a mail is normally sent.
- If the recipient subscribes to I-mode, you can send I-mode mail from your FOMA terminal to an I-mode terminal of the movia service.

## Searching an address in the Phonebook

<Address book>

### 1 From the function menu in the New mail screen, select "Look-up address" - "Phonebook" so as to search in the Phonebook.



Phonebook search → p.116

You can also enter mail recipients:

- by typing them in manually → p.156
- by choosing from the Address list → p.157
- by choosing from the Mail member → p.158

### 2 On the details screen of the searched Phonebook, select the mail address of the recipient.



If the recipient terminal is of the I-mode, you can send mail, just typing the part before "0".  
If a comma "," or a space is included in an address, the mail cannot be sent. If you add "184", "185", "431F", or "4 31F" to the head of a phone number (in case of phone No.), an alarming message to prompt you to delete the Notify caller ID before sending the mail. When "YES" is selected, the I-mode mail will be sent with "184", "185", "431F" and "4 31F" deleted.

### Changing an entered recipient

Select a recipient on the New mail screen and retype his/her correct address.  
You can do the same by selecting "Look-up address" from the function menu on the New mail screen.  
Adding a recipient or change a recipient type → p.157

### 3 Edit the subject and text, and send the mail.



For more detailed procedure, see p.153

- When "Restricted dialing" (p.141) is set, you cannot invoke from the Phonebook those phone numbers that are not specified to "Restricted dialing".
- When entering a recipient from the Phonebook set to "Secret code" (p.127), a secret code is automatically added to the mail being sent. At the recipient, however, the secret code attached to the sent mail is not stored. The secret code will only be added if the recipient's address is phone number or "(phone number)@docomo.ne.jp".


## Entering a recipient from the address list <Sent address>

You can enter a recipient from the sent address or received address record invoked on display.

<Example: Invoking the sent address record>

- 1 On the New mail display, select "Look-up address" - "Sent address" from the function menu.

For the sent address. → p.154

- 2 Choose the sent address record to be used as the recipient. Check the mail address and press  [Select].

A new mail screen is displayed with the address entered.

- 3 Edit subject and message and send.

For further operations, see Steps 4 to 6 on p.153.

- NOTE**
- In the Sent address or Received address list, you can store a maximum of 30 I-mode mail addresses, sent and received alike, and SMS phone numbers.
  - When the number of items in the sent address or received address record exceeds 30, the entries are overwritten from the oldest.
  - Once you set the "PIM lock" and "Keypad dial lock" (p.204 and p.205), all entries in the sent address and received address records are deleted.

## Adding receiver <Add receiver>

- You can specify up to 5 recipients' addresses. If there are already 5 addresses entered or there is no addresses entered, you cannot select "Add receiver" from the function menu.
- A recipient can be classified into three types, "[To]", "[Cc]" and "[Bcc]". Enter a recipient to which to send mail into "[To]". You cannot send mail in whose "[To]" no recipient is entered.

<Example: Adding an address using Phonebook>

- 1 On the New mail screen, select "Add receiver" - "Phonebook" from the function menu to search the Phonebook.

For searching a Phonebook → p.116

- 2 On the details screen for the searched Phonebook, select the mail address of the recipient.



To add recipients, repeat Step 1 and 2.

To change a recipient entered  
Choose a recipient you want to change and enter a new mail address.

You can do the same by selecting "Look-up address" from the function menu, to change (overwrite) the recipient.

To change the type of a recipient added

Highlight a recipient you want to change. Select "Change rec. type" from the function menu and choose an item.

- To : A recipient to which to send mail.
- Cc : A recipient to which to broadcast. The mail address entered in the Cc recipient is displayed at other recipients. Use this when sending others copies of the mail that you are sending to the recipient.
- Bcc : A recipient to which to broadcast. The mail address entered in the Bcc recipient is not displayed at other recipients.

To delete a recipient

Highlight a recipient you want to delete. Select "Delete receiver" from the function menu and select "YES". If one or more recipients follow the deleted recipient, these are displayed, moved up. If only one recipient is entered, you cannot delete it.

- 3 Edit subject and message and send.

For the detailed steps hereafter, see Step 4 to 6 on p.153.

- NOTE**
- All addresses entered into "[To]" and "[Cc]" are displayed on the receiving side. Some types of terminal, however, are not able to display them. Addresses entered into "[Bcc]" are not displayed on the receiving side.
  - You can see if transmission to a recipient you specified succeeded on the Sent mail details screen. → p.148.
  - When you're going to send mail for which more than one entry is made about the same recipient, a confirmation message appears, asking if you send it, deleting the overlapping recipients.

## Entering address using mail member <Mail member>

By using Mail member function, you can specify multiple addresses at the same time. To use this function, the mail addresses need to be registered in the Mail member group in advance.

- All recipients stored in Mail member are entered into "[To]". You can change the recipient type to "[Cc]" or "[Bcc]". → p.157

- 1 On the New mail display, select "Look-up address" - "Mail member" from the function menu.
  - 2 Select the Mail member.
- When you select a Mail member, those members' addresses will be entered.
- 3 Edit subject and message and send.

For the detailed steps hereafter, see Steps 4 to 6 on p.153.

- NOTE**
- If "Keypad dial lock" (p.205) is active, you cannot use Mail member to enter addresses.
  - If there are any other addresses already entered when you try to use Mail member, a message appears to tell you that all such pre-entered addresses will be overwritten. If you select "YES", all pre-entered addresses will be deleted and those addresses registered in Mail member will be entered.



**Reset to the last decoration**

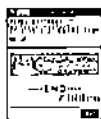
On the message entry screen, select "Undo" from the function menu. The decoration you have just set will be canceled.

If the last operation is pasting characters or deleting characters by pressing **[Enter]** for a second or more, you can also cancel these operations.

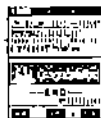
**3 Type the message.**

After entering the message, the decorated text appears with " " displayed at top left and with the following decoration details icon at top right.

- : Appears when you select the Font color.
- : Appears when you set the Font size to "Large", "Standard" and "Small" respectively.
- : Appears when you change the Word alignment to "Center" or "Right".
- : Appears when you set Blink.
- : Appears when you set Ticker display.
- : Appears when you set Swing.



Previewing messages that you decorate  
Select "Preview" from the function menu.  
You can preview the message decoration.

**4 Press **[Set]** on the message entry screen.**

The sending preview screen is displayed.  
If a phone number, a mail address or an URL is entered in a message, those are displayed with underline etc., but you cannot use the "Phone To", "Mail To", or "Web To" function.

**5 Press **[Send]**.**

To continue editing  
Press **[Set]**

- You can insert up to 10 images. However, in some operations an insufficient memory message may be displayed even when the number of inserted images does not exceed 10. When an insufficient memory warning message is displayed, press **[Select]** to close the message and then delete unnecessary images.
- When you execute "Add header" in the compose message screen, the header will be added without decoration. Therefore, depending on background colors, you may not be able to see header. In addition, if you execute "Add signature", a signature will be pasted in the color of the end of message and with its character size. To change decoration of a header and a signature, add decoration after pasting them.
- When you insert the same image, it is regarded as single image. But when you insert the same image after returning to the new mail screen or saving the composing mail, it is regarded as different image. Therefore, the number of characters that can be entered decreases as long as the capacity of the image increases.

**Decorate an entered message**

Even after typing in a mail message, you can change the font color, size and position and can set for Blink, Ticker and Swing. You can change the settings of the decorated message as well.

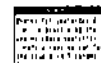
- You cannot change the background, insert neither an Image or line in the Edit decoration.

**1 Select [Decorate mail] from the function menu when entering the mail body.**

Icons for the decoration menu items will be displayed on the lower half of the screen.

**2 Select **[Decorate]** from the decoration menu.**

The message entry screen will be displayed.

**3 Press **[Left]** to highlight the first character of a string whose decoration you want to change. Press **[Start]**.**

To decorate all of mail  
Press **[All]**.

**4 Press **[Right]** to highlight the entire string whose decoration you want to change. Press **[End]**.****5 Select an item you want to set from the decoration menu and then press **[Select]**.**

Decorating method --p.174

To blink, display as ticker or swing characters:  
Select each item from the decoration menu and then select **[Blink]**.

**Canceling Decorations**

You can specify the range of message to cancel the decorations that you set such as font color, font size, ticker, blink and swing of characters.

- To cancel the word alignment, background color and inserted lines or images -- p.179

**1 Select [Decorate mail] from the function menu when entering the mail body.**


Icons for the decoration menu items will be displayed on the lower half of the screen.



**2 Select **[Decorate]** from the decoration menu.**

The message entry screen will be displayed.




**3** Press  at the starting point where you wish to cancel the decoration and then press  [Start].

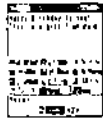
To decorate all of mail  
Press  [Alt].

**4** Press  at the ending point of the decoration cancellation and then press  [End].

Icons for the decoration menu items will be displayed on the lower half of the screen. In this case, only icons for the decoration functions that can be changed in the selection part will be displayed.

**5** Select "" from the decoration menu.

When multiple decoration items are set, multiple selections are possible.



**6** Press .

The decoration will be canceled.


### Canceling all decorations in mail body

You can cancel all decorations including such as the word alignment, background color and inserted lines or images that you set in the mail body.


● To cancel only decorations such as font color, font size, flicker, blink and swing of characters. → p.178

**1** Select [Decorate mail] from the function menu when entering the mail body.

Icons for the decoration menu items will be displayed on the lower half of the screen.

**2** Select "" from the decoration menu.



A message appears confirming you that you cancel all decorations of the mail. Selecting "YES" cancels all current decorations, bringing you back to the New mail display. If an image is inserted, a message appears notifying you that the inserted image is deleted. The icon  at top left disappears.

## Attaching a File to an i-mode Mail

With i-mode mail, you can attach the following files when sending it. You can send mail by attaching photos (eMail) and movies photographed with the built-in camera, and images and i-motion (i-motion mail) downloaded from sites and Web pages with your FOMA terminal.

File type	Max. number of files that can be attached to a mail message	Note
Melody	10	Up to 10 files for melodies and still images in total can be attached. Depending on the size of the data, the maximum amount of attached files will vary. In addition, either one large-sized still image or a movie/ i-motion can be attached.
Image **	1	
Large-sized still image **		
Movie/i-motion (i-motion mail)		

- \*1 For still image taken by the built-in camera (p.221) or an image downloaded from a site with less than 10,000 bytes. "img" or "img\*" or "img\*" or "img\*" icon will appear followed by the title name on the image list screen. (On the picture list screen, those icons will be displayed followed by the pop-up title name.)
- \*2 For image in JPEG form that is larger than 10,000 bytes and up to 102,400 bytes. "img" or "img\*" icon will appear followed by the title name on the image list screen. (On the picture list screen, the icon will be displayed followed by the pop-up title name.)
- If you attach a file, the maximum number of characters you can enter for a message is reduced.
  - If the receiving terminal is of the i-mode of the mova service, attached JPEG image/MPEG 1 file(s) (with a maximum of 10,000 bytes) are sent as i-shot mail (p.184). Attached file(s) of other type(s) are deleted, but a maximum of full-pitch 2,000 characters of the message can be sent.

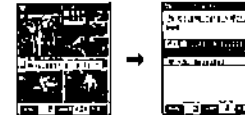
<Example: Attaching Images>

**1** When composing a mail, select "Attach file" - "Attach Image" from the function menu.

Attaching melody  
Select "Attach file" - "Attach melody" from the function menu.

**2** Select the folder that contains an image you want to attach.

**3** Select the image you want to attach.



Images that cannot be attached to the mail are not displayed. If the images are too many or too large size, it may take some time to display the image list screen.

To switch image list display

Select "Title name" from the function menu.

The picture list display switches to the title list display. You cannot select images that cannot be attached to the mail.

To return to the picture list display, select "Picture" from the function menu.

To display image

Select an image that you want to display with and press .

To return to the list screen, press .

To play melody

Highlight the melody you want to play and then press .

To stop the melody playing, press either , , , or . If manner mode is set, a confirmation message appears asking whether or not you play the melody. To play, select "YES".

**Sending an image to movie i-mode terminal through i-shot mail**  
 Mail with an image attached can be sent to movie i-mode terminal as i-shot mail. You can only send a JPEG image up to 10,000 bytes to movie i-mode terminal. If you attach multiple data files, entire attachment data will be deleted and only the message will be delivered to the recipient.  
 When you send mail to an i-mode terminal of the movie service, if the recipient does not set for split mail, mail message can contain a maximum of 164 characters in full pitch. If the recipient sets for split mail, mail message can contain a maximum of 2,000 characters in full-pitch including a shot URL (from where he/she can download images).  
 You can only send JPEG images of up to 10,000 bytes. You cannot send an i-mode mail with an attached JPEG image larger than 10,000 bytes to an i-mode terminal of the movie service. GIF images downloaded from a site will be deleted and only the mail message will be delivered to the recipient.

- You cannot attach a file in the following cases:
  - When data amount of your message (including the attached files) already reaches 5,000 full-pitch characters (10,000 bytes).
  - When attaching a file makes your message (including the attached file) exceed 5,000 full-pitch characters (10,000 bytes).  
 \* Images that exceed the maximum data amount is displayed as right on the image picture list screen.
- When you have already attached 11 melodies or images and large images, movies or i-motions in total.
- When the file is prohibited from attaching to the mail or outputting to any terminals other than FOMA terminal.
- You can attach/send a still image taken by the built-in camera even if you set "File restriction" to "Restricted". However, the recipient cannot output the file.
- When the file is the original animation.
- You cannot attach large images in the following cases:
  - When data amount of the large image exceeds 100Kbytes (102,400 bytes).
  - When the remaining data amount of message (including the attached file) is less than 100 full-pitch characters (200 bytes) for text mail and less than 200 full-pitch characters (400 bytes) for Deco-mail.
  - When you have already attached the large image, movie or i-motion.  
 You can attach/send a still image taken by the built-in camera even if you set "File restriction" to "Restricted". However, the recipient cannot output the file.
- You cannot send i-mode mail with the large images to i-mode terminals.
- If you attach the large images, the number of the characters that you can enter for the message is reduced by 100 full-pitch characters (200 bytes) for text mail and by 200 full-pitch characters (400 bytes) for Deco-mail.
- If images or melodies are pasted, the capacity of data which will be actually sent will appear on the i-mode mail compose display. In case of images, since the file size that can be managed in the FOMA terminal appears in image info, it may be different from the capacity appearing in the i-mode mail compose display.
- If you send i-mode mail with VGA size image (p.269), the recipient can display the image on a terminal having a larger display such as a PC or FOMA terminal that supports movie display function. Even if the image can be displayed, the image size may be scaled down. Also if the memory is insufficient, a confirmation message appears saying that the image cannot be displayed because it exceeds the maximum size. In this case, it is impossible to display the image.
- The image attached to the mail may not be displayed correctly. Moreover, the image may be displayed with poor quality.
- If the recipient's terminal is not FOMA N900G, the melody that you sent may not be played correctly.



<Example: Attaching a movie or i-motion>

- 1 During composing mail, select "Attach file" - "Attach i-motion" from the function menu.
- 2 Select the folder where the movie or i-motion you want to attach is.
- 3 Select the movie or i-motion you want to attach.



To play a movie or i-motion  
 Press [F5] [Play] on the list screen.  
 Press [EXIT] to stop playing.

You cannot select movie or i-motion that cannot be attached to mail.

- Movies and i-motion cannot be attached in the following cases:
  - The data size of the movies or i-motion exceeds 100 KB (102,400 bytes).
  - The remaining data size of the message (including attached files) is less than 100 characters in full pitch (or 200 bytes) as text mail or less than 200 characters in full pitch (or 400 bytes) as Deco-mail.
  - Large images, movies or i-motion has already been attached.
  - The i-motion has a replay restriction.  
 When attaching movies photographed with the built-in camera, even if "File restriction" is set to "Restricted", you can attach the file to send the mail. However, the recipient cannot output the received files.
- When a movie, or i-motion is attached, the number of characters that can be entered in the message decreases by 100 characters in full pitch (or 200 bytes) if the mail is a text or by 200 characters in full pitch (or 400 bytes) for Deco-mail.

#### Speed photo mail

### Sending Photo During Phone Conversation

- You can send a still image photographed then and there or a still image stored in a FOMA terminal to the recipient during a voice call.
- To use Speed photo mail, the recipient's phone number and mail address must be stored under the same memory number in your Phonebook in advance.

<Example: Sending a still image you have just taken>

- 1 During a call, select "Speed photo mail" from the function menu and select "Photo mode".

To send a still image stored in a FOMA terminal  
 Select "View photo" on the Camera screen.  
 Still images that cannot be sent are indicated in gray and cannot be selected.  
 You can only send "Mail (L)" or "Mail (S)" image below 9,000 bytes.

## 2 Press [Record] or [Memo/Check] to photograph a still image.



Photographing causes a shutter sound. Before photographing, you can set various applied features of the camera including brightness adjustment and image size setting. → p.266

To send a still image after saving it in your terminal. From the function menu, select "Save & send". If you select "Set as display", you can send it after saving, subsequently attaching it to your mail (p.301).

## 3 Press [Send] and [Select].



A message to confirm sending appears. If more than 1 mail address is stored: Select the mail address of the recipient.

 Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

- You cannot use this function under the following circumstances:
  - The other party's phone number and mail address are not recorded in your Phonebook.
  - The other party's phone number and mail address are recorded in your Phonebook with "Secret mode" or "Secret only mode".
  - The recipient of the voice call does not have ID display activated (such as caller ID unset or not supported).
  - While restrict dialing is active, the other party's phone number is not set to restrict dialing.
  - PIM lock is active.
  - Packet transmission (PPP) is in progress.
  - Draft box is full.
  - Call waiting service is in use.
  - Your unit rings during updating software.
- If more than 1 mail address of the person you are talking to is stored in the Phonebook, the priorities of the highlighted addresses on the sent confirmation screen are shown below. ① has the highest priority.
  - ① i-mode address (domain name is "@docomo.ne.jp")
  - ② address or phone number without domain (domain name is a character string after "@" )
  - ③ the first address recorded in the Phonebook.
- Mail sent using this function, your phone number becomes the subject, which is saved in the Outlook.
- If "Attached file" setting (p.227) is set not to receive images, the still image attached will be deleted upon receipt of the speed photo mail.
- Even where "Format setting" is "640×480", "325×288" or "Standard (240×265)", if you start this function, the setting changes to "Mail (L)" (176×144).
- If you try to change "Format setting" during starting up this function, you cannot select other than "Mail (L)" (176×144) and "Mail (S)" (128×96).

## Composing i-mode Mail Using Various Data

- Select "Compose message" from the function menu on the screens for following data. You can compose i-mode mail by attaching and pasting data on the mail message:
  - Site pages, Bookmarks, URLs on URL history
  - Melodies stored in "Melody" (p.333)
  - Images stored in "Image" (p.294)
  - Movies and i-motion stored in "Motion" (p.308)
  - Still images and movies taken by the built-in camera → p.251 and p.260
  - "Schedule" → p.216
  - "Text memo" → p.234
- ①: You can send still images and movies taken by your built-in camera even if it is set not to output outside. The recipient cannot output such files.
- ②: Schedule data that can be pasted on i-mode mail is limited to the date, start time and content of the schedule.
- You cannot compose i-mode mail using any melody, image, movie or i-motion that you are not allowed to attach to mail or output from your FOMA terminal.

<Example: Composing mail, pasting the URL of a site page on display>

### 1 While a site is displayed, select "Compose message" from the function menu.

The URL will be pasted in the mail message and the new mail screen appears.

### 2 Enter recipient's address, subject and message and send.

For the detailed steps hereafter, see Steps 4 to 6 on p.153.

<Example: Creating a mail with an attachment of a picture (still image) taken with the built-in camera>

### 1 On the Image list screen, specify the folder where an image you want to attach to select the image.



For operation of "Image" → p.294

### 2 Select "Compose message" from the function menu.

### 3 Enter recipient's address, subject and message and send.

For the detailed steps hereafter, see Steps 4 to 6 on p.153.

- When the recipient is using a terminal that is not FOMA N500G, the melody that you sent may not play correctly.
- The image attached to i-mode mail may not be displayed properly. If the receiving terminal is of the i-mode of the movie services, you can only attach 1 image file in the JPEG format (10,000 bytes max.), and the message can be as long as 184 characters in full pitch. If the recipient sets for split mail, he/she can receive a maximum of 2,000 characters in full-pitch including i-label URLs (from where he/she can download images).
- When the image data exceeds 100 KB (102,400), you cannot select "Compose message" from the function menu.

## Composing i-mode Mail Using Mail-connected i-cppli

You can compose i-mode mail using mail-connected i-cppli.

- Mail-connected i-cppli stores sent/received mail with creating the folder "!!" only for mail-connected i-cppli.

**1** Select  "Outbox".

Outbox will be displayed.

**2** Select "Mail-connected i-cppli", then folder "!!".

Mail-connected i-cppli will start.  
You can start this by selecting mail-connected i-cppli from the i-cppli list.

**3** Select the screen to compose mail using mail-connected i-cppli.

i-cppli operations and screen displays vary according to the software.

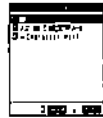
**4** Select the operation to send mail.

The New mail screen appears.  
A subject, recipient and message may automatically be entered from mail-connected i-cppli.

**5** Enter recipient's address, subject and message and send.

For the entering procedure, see Steps 4 to 5 on p.153.

### About the folders of mail-connected i-cppli



When you send/receive i-mode mails by mail-connected i-cppli, the mails are saved in each dedicated folder that is created in the Outbox and Inbox when mail-connected i-cppli is downloaded.  
You can create up to 3 folders of mail-connected i-cppli in each of the Outbox and Inbox.

### NOTE

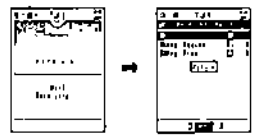
- Mail-connected i-cppli may send and receive mails without displaying the New mail screen.

## Receiving i-mode Mail

If your FOMA terminal is within communication range, i-mode mail is automatically delivered to you from the i-mode Center.

- Up to 1,000 mail including received i-mode mail and SMS can be stored in your FOMA terminal. The maximum number of mail messages you can store is between 21 and 1,000 depending on the amount of mail data.
- You can select your favorite ring tone to notify you of arriving mail using "Select ring tone" (p.163) or change the blink pattern by using "Illumination" (p.185).
- You can receive on your FOMA terminal i-mode mail sent from an i-mode terminal of the mova service.
- If you receive i-mode mail during FOMA terminal operation, the receiving screen will not appear and you can continue the FOMA operation by default.  
Appearance of "E" icon notifies you of arriving mail without setting off ring tone, LED light, vibrator or display light. (If you have your FOMA terminal folded, a blinking icon on the image window and display light will activate to notify you of the arrival of mail.)
- You can also select to have your FOMA terminal set off a ring tone and to display the receiving screen whenever mail arrives while your FOMA terminal is turned on. → p.224

### 1 When you receive i-mode mail, "E" icon blinks and the screen displays "Mail Receiving..."



After downloading of mail is complete, the number of received mail messages of Msg. Request/Free will be displayed on the received result screen.  
Select "Mail" to display a list of received mail.  
If no action is taken for 15 seconds, you will be returned to the previous screen. This 15-second delay can be changed by "Mail/Msg. rmg time" function (p.230).

**About i-mode mail icon appearance**  
 Blinking "E" icon means you are receiving mail. When mail downloading is completed, the icon stops blinking and remains on.  
 Appearance of "E" icon or "E" icon indicates that your FOMA terminal cannot receive any more i-mode mail. Open unread mail or deactivate protection (p.211) until these icons disappear. The oldest mail you have read or deactivated the protection will be overwritten by new mail upon arrival.  
**When you receive i-shot service mail**  
 If you receive i-shot service mail from the mova service terminal, you receive the image as an attached mail file.

Receiving i-mode Mail Automatically

Receiving i-mode Mail Automatically

- Once the number of received mail saved in your FOMA terminal (including both i-mode mail and SMS) reaches the maximum limit (p.21), incoming mail will automatically overwrite the oldest mail in trash box and oldest received mail in that order. However, unread mail and protected mail will not be overwritten. We recommend that you protect mail you want to retain. →p.211
- The received mail displayed on the screen of Inbox or Recv. mail is not overwritten, even if the task is switched when the mail is displayed. If a mail is received when the screen of Inbox or Recv. mail is displayed, a mail that is not displayed and is in the trash box or the oldest mail (except if unread or protected) is overwritten.
- If you set your terminal not to receive i-mode mail automatically (p.224), i-mode mail sent to your address will be kept at the i-mode Center. [ ] icon will appear in the top portion of the display. If you use "Check new message" function (p.180), you can download all the i-mode mail and Msg. Request/Free from the Center at once. You can also check the subjects for the i-mode mail stored at the Center and select specific ones to download. →p.185
- The maximum size of an i-mode mail message you can receive is 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters. If a message exceeds this limit, "?" or "!" will appear at the end of the message and the excess characters will be deleted automatically.
- The i-mode Center may not accept mail that requires an unusually large amount of memory. Such mail will be returned with an error message.
- You can select if you receive melodies or images attached to mail using "Attached file" setting function (p.227).
- When FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail, that mail is deleted from the i-mode Center.
- The maximum number of i-mode mail messages that can be stored at the i-mode Center is between 207 and 1,000 depending on the amount of data they contain. Retention period is 720 hours. Mail will be automatically deleted at the end of the retention period.
- When number of i-mode mail messages stored at the i-mode Center reaches the maximum limit, the Center will begin rejecting i-mode mail. Such mail will be returned with an error message or as error mail to the sender.
- You can transmit melodies, movies/i-motion and images as attachment files to i-mode mail. Files that i-mode mail does not support will automatically be deleted at the i-mode Center. If attachment file has been deleted, "添付ファイルが削除 (Attached file deleted)" message will be added. However, there are some instances where "添付ファイルが削除 (Attached file deleted)" message will not be added or the attachment file cannot be deleted properly.
- When you download new i-mode mail, other i-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free stored at the i-mode Center will be downloaded at the same time.
- If you receive speed-photo mail during a voice call, attached still images are automatically displayed. If you have set "Speed photo mail auto disp." (p.228) to "OFF", the still images are not automatically displayed. When you receive mail sent using this function, the sender's phone number becomes the subject, and i-mode mail and images attached without the message are saved in the Inbox.
- You can check in which address type of To, Cc and Bcc you have received i-mode mail on the FOMA terminal which can set To, Cc and Bcc.
- There are cases that Deco-mail received from a PC will not properly be displayed.
- You can pre-define the limit of i-mode mail size to receive. →p.240
- The priority of Ring volume and illumination when you receive i-mode mail is as follows (○ has the highest priority):
  - ① "Utilities (Phonebook)" specified to each mail address →p.120
  - ② "Utilities (Group)" specified to each group
  - ③ "Select ring tone" and "Illumination" →p.183 and p.185
- When you receive more than one mail, the Ring volume sounds and illumination blinks in the conditions set on the mail received last.
- Ring tone volume will be as set for "Mail/Message" of "Ring volume" (p.79).

## Displaying New i-mode Mail

If your FOMA terminal is within communication range, i-mode mail is automatically delivered to you from the i-mode Center. Received mail will be saved in the Inbox.

- [ ] will appear in the upper portion of the screen when your FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail from the i-mode Center.

1 Select [ ] ▶ "Inbox" ▶ "Inbox".

[ ] appears on the Standby display. If an added folder exists, choose it on the Inbox folder display. The Received mail display appears.

2 Select mail to display.

Displaying previous and next mail  
Press [ ] on the mail details screen.  
Press [ ] to return to the list of received mail.

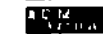
### Standby display when you receive mail

When you receive i-mode mail, [ ] will appear on the standby display. If you select the icon, "New mail" appears.  
If you receive mail while you are viewing Inbox, the icon may not appear.  
You can call up the list of received mail by selecting the icon.



### If you receive mail while the FOMA terminal is folded

When i-mode mail is received, a message appears on the image window, telling you of message receipt.



- You can view mail information (sender, subject and date/time it arrived at the i-mode Center) without opening it by selecting "Mail Info" from the function menu on the list of received mail screen.
- You can paste a mail address for i-mode mail sender or broadcasting recipient on the standby display as a desktop icon. You can use this icon to compose a new i-mode mail to that address. However, you cannot attach a mail address with [ ], [ ], [ ] as a desktop icon. Even for mail with the same information, you can attach only one mail address in one operation.

### Mail-connected i-rpp1

- i-mode mails sent using i-mail connected i-rpp1 are sorted to the dedicated folder for the mail-connected i-rpp1.
- If a sender sends an i-mode mail using the mail-connected i-rpp1, the mail is sorted to the dedicated folder for mail-connected i-rpp1 in the recipient's terminal.
- If there is no dedicated folder in the recipient's terminal, if the mail is sorted to a folder in accordance with the setting of "Auto-sort". If no setting is made for "Auto-sort", the mail is sorted to Inbox.
- Selecting the dedicated folder for mail-connected i-rpp1 activates the software.
- If you want to view the mail list screen in the dedicated folder without starting the software, highlight the folder and select "Open folder" from the function menu.

Receive option

## Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively

You can check the subjects of mail messages stored at the i-mode Center and select the mail to download to your own terminal. You can also delete mail at the i-mode Center before downloading.

- To use this function, "Receive option setting" (p.224) must be "ON".
- For details, refer to [FOMA i-mode User's Manual].

### When a mail comes in with "Receive option" set to "ON"

If "Receive option" (p.224) is set to "ON", mail are not received automatically. Mails that come in are stored in the i-mode Center and "f" is displayed at the top of the screen.



- When "Receive option" is set to "ON", the mail ring tone does not sound. Moreover, the terminal does not vibrate in the manner mode or vibrator is set.

### Receiving mails selectively

- For details, refer to [FOMA i-mode User's Manual].

#### 1 Select "Receive option".

If "Receive option setting" is "OFF", a message appears asking you if you want to set your mail receive options. Select "Receive option setting". Choose "ON" to proceed to Step 2. When the Receive option screen is displayed using this function, the icon "f" is turned off even if not received/deleted mail.

#### 2 Select a receive option (Receive, Delete or Hold) for each mail.

i-motion mail

## Capturing i-motion through i-motion Mail

When you receive mail, movies sent as i-motion mail or i-motion files are not downloaded to your FOMA terminal. You will need to download them from the i-motion mail Center. The movies and i-motion you captured through i-motion mail will be saved as a part of received mail.

- Only the recipient can download movies/i-motion attached to i-motion mail from the i-motion mail Center.

<Example: Saving i-motion>

### 1 Select mail with "f" icon from the list of received mail.



To display the URL from which i-motion was captured, select "URL" from the function menu on the mail detailed screen.

### 2 Select i-motion you want to capture.



i-motion will be captured. When data downloading is complete, a message will appear to notify inform you of the completion of downloading and "f" will change to "B" on the received mail details screen.

To stop downloading i-motion  
Hold down **[END]** for 1 or more seconds  
Some i-motion message(s) moves will start playing automatically during downloading. When playback is complete, the data download completion screen is displayed.

### 3 Select "Save data" from the function menu and select "YES" and the folder to be saved.



A message will appear informing you that the i-motion has been saved. If there is not enough memory to save the i-motion, follow the instruction messages and delete unnecessary/undesired i-motion.

- p.89
- A movie or i-motion captured from an i-motion mail is stored in the "i-Motion" folder in "Multimedia". → p.100

- Movies or i-motions downloaded by i-motion mail are saved as part of received mails. When the size of received mails exceeds the limit of Inbox at that time, mails in the Trash box and old received mails are automatically deleted. However, unread mails and protected received mails are not deleted. It is recommended that you protect the important received mails. → p.211
- To play movies and i-motion attached to i-motion mail on other device such as PC, special software is required. Please go to the DoCoMo website for details.
- If "Pasted i-motion" (p.226) is "Invalid", i-motion that download is not completed will not be displayed in mail messages.
- If "i-motion auto play" (p.227) is "ON", i-motion will be played automatically. If it is "OFF", the play screen will not be displayed and the confirmation screen will appear to notify you that the data has been successfully downloaded.
- Some i-motion cannot be played during data downloading.
- Even if the radio wave becomes too weak to play i-motion, i-motion will play as much of the data that has been downloaded provided i-motion has been set to play during data downloading. In this case, the screen informing you that downloading has been successfully completed will not appear and you will be required to download the data again.
- If there are multiple movies pasted in a message, or if they are pasted together with "Link To", "B" will appear and other data will be invalid. Even if you invalidate "Pasted i-motion" or "Link To", the data does not appear as a character.
- When an i-motion attached to a mail is captured in a FOMA terminal, the i-motion stored in the i-motion mail Center is deleted.



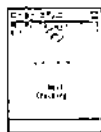
## Check new message

## Inquiring About New I-mode Mail in the Center

Default setting: Check all (Mail, Msg. Request, Msg. Free)

- I-mode mail that arrives at the I-mode Center is automatically sent to FOMA terminals. In the following cases mail is stored at the I-mode Center:
  - When the power of FOMA terminal is not turned on.
  - When "MA" is displayed.
  - When the memory is full.
  - When "Receive option setting" (p.224) is "Off".
- When "MA" is on display, you cannot make any inquiry.
- Use "I-mode checking" (p.128) to specify which items to check. If you do not need to download Msg. Request/Free, specify that "Msg. Request" and "Msg. Free" are not to be checked.

1 Select [MENU] ▶ "Check new message".



[MA] appears on the Standby display.

The mail checking screen appears.

Inquiry is made in the order of "Mail" → "Msg. Request" → "Msg. Free".

You can check I-mode mail by selecting "Check new message" from I-mode menu or holding down [MENU]

for 1 or more seconds on standby display.

During an inquiry, [MA], [R], and [F] blinks, displaying "Mail Checking", and I-mode mail, Msg. Request,

and Msg. Free are received.

Number of I-mode mail and Msg. Request/Free newly received is displayed.

Cancelling an Inquiry

Press [END] for a second or longer during making an inquiry.

When you cancel the checking operation, you may receive I-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free depending on the timing of cancellation.

## About I-mode mail icon appearance

Appearance of [MA] (blue) icon means that I-mode mail is stored at the I-mode Center. If the space for your I-mode mail at the I-mode Center is full, [MA] (red) icon appears.

- [MA], [R], [F], and [M] icons indicate that your FOMA terminal cannot receive any more I-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free. Delete unnecessary mail or Msg. Request/Free, open unread mail or deactivate protection (p.211) until these icons disappear. The oldest mail or Msg. Request/Free you have read or deactivated the protection on, will be overwritten by new arriving messages.
- The maximum number of I-mode mail messages that can be stored at the I-mode Center is between 207 and 1,000 depending on the amount of data they contain. The retention period is 720 hours. Mail will automatically be deleted at the end of the retention period.
- Even if there is I-mode mail stored at the I-mode Center, [MA] icon may not appear. (e.g. FOMA terminal is off or [MA] is already being displayed when I-mode mail arrives at the Center.)
- I-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free stored in the I-mode Center may not be included in the number of received I-mode mails or Msg. Request/Free that is displayed when checking for new messages.

## Reply to i-mode mail

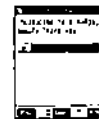
## Replying to i-mode Mail

You can reply to the sender of I-mode mail. You can enter new message, referring to the mail or quoting received message when you compose your reply mail.

- If "Keypad dial lock" (p.205) is set, you can reply only to I-mode mail whose sender and addresses of the same mail (To and Cc) are all registered in the Phonebook.
- To the subject of reply message, "Re:" will be added. You can enter up to 15 full-pitch characters including "Re:" for subject. Surplus will be deleted.

## Entering new message to reply

1 Display the details screen for the mail you want to reply to and press [REPLY].



To view I-mode mail you have received, → p.181

To reply to the sender of a mail sent to multiple recipients

Select "To sender" in the reply screen.

To reply to all broadcasting recipients, select "To all".

If the sender cannot be replied, the mail reply screen with all the addresses including the other broadcast recipients' ones deleted will appear. If there are any broadcast recipients' addresses that cannot be replied, the mail reply screen with the addresses which cannot be replied deleted will appear.

2 Edit subject and message text, and send.

For further operations, see Step 4 to 6 on p.153.

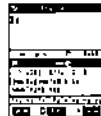
After completion of transmission, the received mail details screen is displayed, and [MA] will change to [M].

- If you reply to I-mode mail that already has "Re:" (all half-pitch character) in front of the subject, "Re2:" will be added to the subject of your reply mail. This repeats until "Re99:". If a full pitch character is included in "Re:" or "Re.", ("E" is uppercase), "Re:" is added to the top of subject.
- If you use half-pitch katakana or pictographs in subject or message, these characters may not appear properly on the recipient's terminal. Do not use such characters if recipient does not possess an I-mode terminal.
- If any I-mode startup information (I-mode To) or I-mode acquisition information is attached or pasted to the I-mode mail you are replying to, such file or information will be deleted.

### To refer to received message to reply

#### 1 Display the details screen of the mail to reply to and select "Reply with ref" from the function menu.

To view I-mode mail you have received. → p.181  
When you compose "Reply with ref" mail, the message input area appears in the upper portion of the screen and the received mail message in the lower part of the screen.



To switch the reference screen between the message input screen  
Change the screen using the Neopointer key.  
If "Pointer" for "Neopointer" (p.245) is "OFF", select "Change window" or holder down (⏏) for one or more seconds to switch the screen.

To copy the message, subject and address from the reference screen  
Select "Copy" from the function menu in the reference screen, and then select, "Message", "Subject" and "Address".

To make a copy → p.317

To reply to the sender of a mail sent to multiple recipients  
Select "To sender" in the reply screen.

To reply to all broadcasting recipients, select "To all".

If the sender cannot be replied, the mail reply screen with all the addresses including the other broadcast recipients' ones deleted will appear. If there are any broadcast recipients' addresses that cannot be replied, the mail reply screen with the addresses which cannot be replied deleted will appear.

#### 2 Edit message and send.

Editing the subject

After displaying the preview screen, press (Set) to return to the reply screen. Then select (Set) and re-enter the subject.

If you press (Set) after the sending preview screen is displayed, and the message entry screen reappears (if you return to the new mail screen, the reference screen will not appear).

For further operations, see Step 5 to 6 on p.153.

After completion of transmission, the received mail details screen is displayed and (Send) will change to (Done).

### Quoting received message to reply

You can quote received I-mode mail message when you reply to it.

- When you reply with quote to a received Deco-mail, the message will be displayed with the decorated message and inserted image quoted.
- The attached file of the I-mode mail quoted will be deleted.

#### 1 Display the details screen of the mail to reply to and select "Reply with quote" from the function menu.

To reply with quote to the sender of a mail with multiple recipients

On the Reply with quote screen, select "To sender".

To reply to all of the broadcast recipients, select "To all".

The received mail message will be displayed on the reply mail message area. Only 1 quotation mark ("") by default will appear at the forefront of the received (quote) message. It does not appear at the beginning of every line.

To edit quotation marks → p.222

#### 2 Edit subject and message, and send.

For further operations, please see Step 4 to 6 on p.153.

After completion of transmission, the received mail details screen is displayed, and (Send) will change to (Done).

### Forwarding I-mode mail

## Forwarding I-mode Mail to Other Addresses

You can forward received I-mode mail to others.

- To the subject of forwarding message, "Fw:" will be added. You can enter up to 15 full-pitch characters including "Fw:" for subject. Surplus will be deleted.
- When you forward a Deco-mail that you have received, the message will appear with the decorated message and inserted images quoted.

#### 1 Display the detailed screen for the mail you wish to forward and select "Forward" from the function menu.

To view I-mode mail you have received. → p.181

#### 2 Enter recipient(s) and press (Set).

To enter recipient(s) using phonebook data, address list or mail members

Select "Look-up address" from the function menu on the mail forwarding screen.

About entering recipient(s) → p.152 and p.157

Subject and message can be edited. You can forward 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters including original message (message you received), additional message (message you entered), header, signature and attachment(s) such as melodies and images.

#### 3 Press (Dsp) to review the mail on the mail preview screen and press (Send).

After completion of transmission, the received mail details screen is displayed, and (Send) will change to (Done).

- If you forward I-mode mail that already has "Fw:" (all half-pitch character) in front of the subject, "Fw2:" will be added to the subject when you forward the mail. This repeats until "Fw99:". If a full-pitch character is included in "Fw:" or if "Fw:" ("W" is uppercase), "Fw:" is added to the top of subject.
- If you use half-pitch katakana or pictographs in subject or message, these characters may not appear properly on the recipient's terminal. Do not use such characters if recipient does not possess an I-mode terminal.
- If any I-mode startup information (I-mode Tel), I-mode acquisition information or file that you are not allowed to attach to mail or output from your FOMA terminal is attached or passed to the I-mode mail you are forwarding, such file or information will be deleted.
- If I-mode is attached to the mail you are forwarding, the maximum number of characters you can use for the message is 4,900 full-pitch characters (9,800 bytes) for text mail and 4,800 full-pitch characters (9,600 bytes) for Deco-mail. When a message exceeding the maximum number has been entered, a message will appear indicating that you have exceeded the maximum number of characters. Select "OK" and then, in the message input screen, delete characters until the number of remaining characters reaches "0".

Store address

## Storing the Mail Address in the Phonebook

You can store mail addresses and phone numbers for the senders of mail in your Phonebook.

<Example: Storing sender's mail address in your Phonebook>

- 1 Select the mail from the list of received mail and select "Store address" from the function menu.

If there is more than one mail address that you are able to record  
Select the mail address you want to register on the mail address selection screen.

To record a mail address or phone number for a sent mail recipient  
Select "Store address" from the function menu on the sent mail details screen.  
If the i-mode mail was sent to more than 1 recipient, a list of mail addresses will appear. Select the mail address you want to store.

- 2 Select "YES" and then select "Phone" - "New".

Data you entered will be displayed on the Phonebook new record screen. Enter necessary information.  
Entering Phonebook - p.108

To record data in FOMA card Phonebook

Select "UIM".

When you store data in FOMA card, input type will be displayed as "Overwrite" instead of "Add".



- If "Restrict dialing" or "Keypad dial lock" (p.141 and p.205) is set to ON, you cannot store data in your Phonebook.
- Mail addresses or phone numbers with "FOMA", "i-mode" or "GPRS" icon cannot be recorded.

Save melody

## Capturing Melody from i-mode Mail

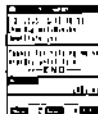
Default setting ON

The melody attached or pasted to received i-mode mail can be saved on your FOMA terminal.

- You can not play a melody during voice call.
- If sender is other than FOMA N900G, the melody you received may not play correctly.

■ When there is space in stored number and memory

- 1 Select mail with "♪♪" or "♪♪" from the list on the received mail screen.



If more than one melody is attached, all melodies will be played  
You can select certain melodies to be played.

To stop the melody

Press either or .

If you do not want to have the melody play when you open mail  
Set "Auto melody" (p.225) to "OFF".

- 2 Highlight the melody to save, select "Save data" from the function menu and then select "YES" to select the folder to be saved.

You can set the saved melody as your ring tone on the following screen.



- The saved melody will be displayed at the top of the list.
- Melodies can be saved as half-pitch alphabetic file name (but, up to 36 characters in half-pitch). If "." is included in a file name, the melody will be saved with the characters after "." deleted. If other than alphabetic is included in a file name, melodies will be saved as "melodyxxx" (xxx: a three-digit number). The last three-digit number of a file name is a serial number to distinguish same file names.
- If "Pasted melody" (p.225) is "Invalid", the melody pasted in i-mode mail message will be displayed by a character string and cannot be played/saved.
- If there are multiple melodies pasted in a message, or if they are pasted together with i-clip To, "B" will appear and other data will be invalid. Even if you invalidate "Pasted melody" or "i-clip To", the data does not appear as a character.

## Displaying the Image Attached to a Mail

### Displaying/saving attached image

You can save images attached to received i-mode mail.

- 1 Select mail with "🖼️" or "🖼️" on the list of received mail screen.



Attached images will be displayed.

If there are more than 1 images attached, all images will be displayed.  
For Deco-mail, the images pasted in the message body will be displayed but attached images will not. To display an image, select file name for it.

To switch image display to file name display

Select an image to display the file name.

To return to the image display, select the file name to display image.

- 2 Highlight an image you want to save and select "Save data" from the function menu and then select "YES".

You can set the saved image as your standby display on the following screen.

- Images can be saved as half-pitch alphabetic file name (but, up to 36 characters in half-pitch). If "." is included in a file name, the image will be saved with the characters after "." deleted. If other than alphabetic is included in a file name, images will be saved as "imagexxx" (xxx: a three-digit number). The last three-digit number of a file name is a serial number to distinguish same file names.
- The image attached to i-mode mail may not be displayed properly. Depending on the image size, it may be proportionally scaled down on the display.
- When the FOMA card is replaced with another one or the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on with the FOMA card removed, you will not be able to display or play the attached or pasted files.

### Saving an image inserted into the body

You can save an image inserted into the body of Deco-mail.

- 1** Select mail from the received mail list screen and select "Save Insert Image" from the function menu.

You can also save an inserted image by selecting "Save insert image" from the function menu from the sent mail details screen.

- 2** Select an image to save and select "YES" to select the folder to be saved.

You can also set the saved image to a standby image on the screen displayed subsequently.

■ **When image/melody is full**

If you are unable to save an image/melody because there is insufficient memory available in your terminal, you will need to delete some unnecessary images/melodies to create more memory.


- 1** When a message appears to ask you if you want to delete, select "YES" and select the folder in which the images or melodies you want to delete is stored.

- 2** Select images and melodies you want to delete.



Deleting image

Checkboxes for the selected images or melodies are marked. Keep selecting images or melodies until "Finish" appears at the bottom left of the screen. You can click the checkbox again to unselect the selected images or melodies.

- 3** Press  [Finish] and select "YES". Select the folder you want to save.

A message informs you that the images or melodies have been saved.

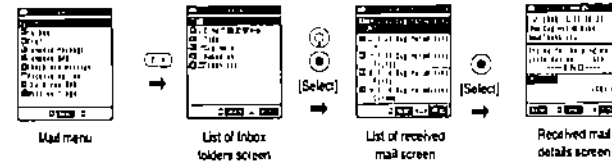
- NOTE**
- If you try to delete image that has "Display setting" (p.177) (indicated by "★") or melody selected for your ring tone (indicated by "★"), a message appears to ask you if you want to delete this image or melody. Select "YES" to delete.
  - If you delete image that has "Display setting" or melody selected for your ring tone, the settings will return to default.

## Displaying Mails in Outbox/Inbox

You can save mail for folders in Inbox and Outbox.

- The default folders are "Inbox", "Outbox", pre-installed mail-connected i-apple folder and "Trash box". You can add new folders.
- There are no folders in Draft.

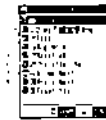
(Example: Inbox)



### How to view the folder list screens

#### How to view received folder list screen

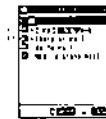
Received folder list screen is displayed as follows:



- ①: Indicates that there is no unread mail.
- ②: Indicates that there is unread mail.
- ③: Indicates that there is no unread mail and security (p.219) is active.
- ④: Indicates that there is unread mail and security is active.
- ⑤: Indicates Inbox folder for mail-connected i-apple (p.170).
- ⑥: Indicates that there is unread mail in the received mail folder for mail-connected i-apple.
- ⑦: Indicates the received mail folder for mail-connected i-apple with security activated.
- ⑧: Indicates that there is unread mail in the received mail folder for mail-connected i-apple with security activated.
- ⑨: Indicates trash box.
- ⑩: Indicates trash box and security is active.

#### How to view sent folder list screen

Sent folder list screen is displayed as follows:



- ①: Indicates folder for sent mail.
- ②: Indicates the sent mail folder with security (p.219) activated.
- ③: Indicates sent mail folder for mail-connected i-apple (p.170).
- ④: Indicates sent mail folder for mail-connected i-apple with security activated.

## List of mail screen

A list appears as follows. Icons appearing on this screen also appear on the mail details screen. Some icons may not appear.



- ① Indicates mail status.
  - ①-1 Received mail
    - Unread mail
    - Read mail
    - Forwarded mail
    - Replied-to mail
    - Unread and protected mail
    - Read and protected mail
    - Forwarded and protected mail
    - Replied-to and protected mail
  - ①-2 Sent mail
    - Successfully sent mail
    - Unsuccessfully sent mail
    - Mail successfully sent to designated multiple recipients
    - Mail successfully sent to some of the designated multiple recipients
    - Mail transmitted to all designated recipients and failed
    - Protected mail
- ② Shows transmission timestamp.
  - ②-1 Sent/received time is displayed for the mail sent/received on the current day.
  - ②-2 Sent/received date is displayed for the mail sent/received up to the previous day.
- ③ Indicates originator (sender's) destinations. If they are stored in your Phonebook, you can choose to display them by name, mail address or phone number. If sender's address is stored in your Phonebook with image data, "i" will appear.
- ④ Indicates mail type and/or attachment data type.
  - In 2-line display
    - It is SMS.
    - It is SMS and SMS report (transmission notice) has been received.
    - It is SMS and it is placed in FOMA card.
    - Melody is attached or pasted.
    - Multiple melodies are attached or pasted and some of the data is inappropriate.
    - Entire data of melodies attached or pasted is inappropriate.
    - This icon also appears when "Pasted melody" (p.225) is set to "Invalid" for pasted melodies.
    - Image (i) is attached.
    - Multiple images are attached and some of the data is inappropriate.
    - Entire data of attached images is inappropriate.
    - Large image is attached.
    - Movies or i-motion data pasted in the i-mode mail have not been downloaded. "Pasted i-motion" (p.226) is set to "Valid".
    - Movies or i-motion data pasted in the i-mode mail have not been downloaded and "Pasted i-motion" is set to "Invalid". Also appears when data before downloading with Deco-mail are incorrect.
    - Movies or i-motion data attached in i-mode mail have been downloaded and the data is appropriate. This also appears when you transmit i-mode mail with movies or i-motion attached.
    - Movies or i-motion data attached to i-mode mail have been downloaded and the data is inappropriate.
    - i-coppl can be started up from mail message. This icon appears if "i-coppl To" (p.226) is set to "Valid".
    - i-coppl cannot be started up from mail message. This icon appears if "i-coppl To" is set to "Invalid".
    - This icon indicates message received or sent by mail-connected i-coppl.
    - There are multiple data pasted. This also appears when data are pasted together with i-coppl To.
    - Attached/pasted file or data cannot be used because the FOMA card inserted is different from the one used when you transmitted mail.
  - In 1-line display
    - One or more files are attached or pasted and does not include a large file.
    - One or more files are attached or pasted and does not include a large file, and part of the data therein is incorrect.
    - The data in all attached or pasted files are incorrect.
    - One or more files are attached, and includes a large file.
    - One or more files are attached and includes a large file, and part of the data therein is incorrect.
    - All attached files are incorrect and includes a large file.
- ⑤ Indicates mail subject. If it is i-mode mail that does not have subject, "No use" appears on the screen. If it is SMS, the beginning of the message will appear. (If SMS report, "SMS report" will appear.)

- If the clock is not set to "Set local time" (p.65), "i-!" will appear for date/time on the list of sent mail and the list of draft mail screens. However, date will appear for SMS sent out successfully.

## Mail details screen

Mail details screen appears as follows:



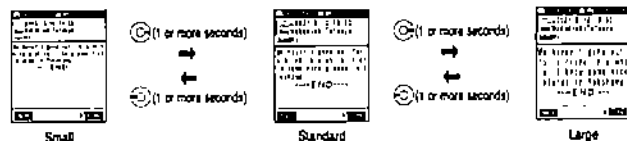
- ① Indicates mail status (see p.147, List of mail screen (1)).
  - ② Indicates sent/received date and time (date and time when the Center received the mail).
  - ③ Displays the transmission type of received mail.
    - S: Indicates that the received mail has been sent to your address specified by the sender.
    - B: Indicates that the received mail is specified by the sender to be broadcast to you.
    - A: Indicates that the sender of the broadcast mail that you received has specified not to display the other recipients.
  - ④ Indicates sender's mail address for the received mail.
    - [i-!]: Indicates that you are a designated recipient.
    - [i-!]: Indicates that you are a designated recipient and indicates the mail address cannot be replied to directly (such as the address that exceeds 50 half-pitch characters).
  - ⑤ Indicates recipient's address and addressing type of the sent mail. You can check if transmission was successful. If there are multiple recipients, all recipients will be displayed.
    - [OK]: Indicates that a recipient to whom transmission was successful.
    - [X]: Indicates that a recipient to whom transmission was not successful.
    - [X]: Indicates that broadcasting recipients to whom transmission failed.
    - [X]: Indicates that broadcasting recipients with no caller IDs to whom transmission was successful.
    - [X]: Indicates that broadcasting recipients with no caller IDs to whom transmission failed.
  - ⑥ Displays up to 4 other recipients of the received mail (excluding your own address).
    - [i-!]: Indicates that the received mail has been specified to your address.
    - [i-!]: Indicates that the received mail has been specified to your address, and that the mail address is the one to which you cannot reply.
    - [i-!]: Indicates that the received mail has been specified to your address to be broadcast to you as a copy.
    - [i-!]: Indicates that the received mail has been specified to your address to be broadcast to you as a copy, and that the sender's address is the one to which you cannot reply.

The address you cannot reply to will be displayed with "i-!", "i-!", "i-!"  
 If the sender of the received mail or the recipient of the sent mail is stored in your Phonebook, "Name" appears in (1), (5) and (6). To display name, the person's mail address must be stored in your Phonebook (→ p.111).
  - ⑦ Indicates that subject of mail. If no subject attached, "No title" will appear. "i-!" will appear for received SMS (or "i-!" will appear for SMS stored in FOMA card) and "SMS" will appear as its subject ("SMS report" for SMS report). If SMS report has already been received, "i-!" will also appear.
  - ⑧ If a file is attached as pasted, a corresponding icon, the file name, and its byte number (file size) are displayed. If a melody is pasted, "i-!" will appear. If the pasted melody data is not correct, "i-!" will appear. Details of the attached and pasted file size (→ p.147).
  - ⑨ Indicates message text for the mail.
  - ⑩ Appears at the end of message text.
- In the following circumstances, "Name" will not appear even if the person's data (such as phone number and mail address) is stored in your Phonebook. Only the person's mail address is displayed.
- "Recalls dialing" (p.155) is in effect and the phone number is not specified for "Recalls dialing".
  - Details of sent/received mail to/from phone number or mail address that is not registered as secret are displayed in secret mode only.
  - Details of sent/received mail to/from phone number or mail address that is registered as secret are displayed in a mode other than secret mode or secret mode only.

## Changing Character Size or mail list display

### Changing character size for mail message

You can change the character size of the message while you are displaying the mail details screen. When you set the character size to "Small", the date and time received/sent, sender, receiver, subject, etc. will also be displayed with small characters.



- If you press when the mail details screen is not displayed, page or cursor will move.
- If you exit from the mail details screen, the size of display character will go back to Standard automatically even if you have selected Small or Large. If you return to the mail details screen, characters will be displayed in the size you selected.
- If you switch display as mentioned above, "Character size" (p.220) setting will also change.

### Switching mail list display (1-line display/2-line display)

You can use "Mail list display" function of "Mail settings" from the Mail menu to select to display 2 lines for mail recipient/sender name or its mail address and subject or to display only 1 line for either name, mail address or subject.

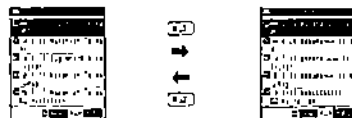


- If you change "Mail list display", display of list of received mail, list of sent mail and list of draft mail is all changed.

### Switching on Mail list display (Name/Address/Subject)

On the Mail list display, you can specify the way of displaying mail, by recipient, sender name, mail address, phone number, or subject. If recipients and sender names are registered in your Phonebook, you can display them on screen.

### Mail list display (2-line display)



### Mail list display (1-line display)

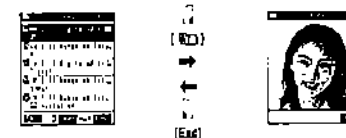


- You can switch a displayed item also by selecting "List setting" from the function menu on the Received mail, Sent mail, or Draft mail display and specifying an item in "Subject", "Name", or "Address".
- Display switching is also possible when trashing or on a selection display to delete a selection or move among folders. Name and address can be switched also on a list display for "Auto-sort" (p.203).

### Mail with photo

If you have received mail from a person whose address is stored in your Phonebook along with an image, will appear on the list of mail screen.

To view the image, select mail with and press .



- To display an image, the mail address of the sender must be properly stored in the Phonebook.
- If "Mail list display" (p.150) is set to 1 line display and you select "Subject" for "List setting", will not appear, if you press the stored image will be displayed.

### Checking the number of saved mail

#### Checking the number of saved Received/Sent mail

To check the number of mail in all folders, select "No. of messages" from the function menu on the Folder list display.

To check the number of mail stored in a specific folder, display a list of received mail in the folder and select "No. of messages" from the function menu.



#### Checking the number of draft mail

On the Draft mail list display, select "No. of messages" from the function menu.

#### About backlight function.

When you unlock your POMA terminal, press a key, or e-mode mail and SMS is received, the backlight will light for about 15 seconds. (The lighting period may change depending on the setting for "Mail Msg. ring tone" (p.233).) However, when the screen displays the text of e-mode mail and SMS, the lighting period may depend on the length of displayed text.

If you select "OFF" for the "Lighting" setting in "Display light" (p.183), the backlight does not light.

## Composing, editing and deleting folder

You can organize received i-mode mail and SMS by dividing them into folders.

- You can add up to 20 other folders.
- You can set received/sent i-mode mail and SMS to be stored automatically into the folders you have added. —p.203
- You cannot delete the "Inbox" and "Trash box" folders, which already exist by default, or change the names of them.

<Example: To compose a folder>

1 Press **[Menu]** and select "Inbox" then select "Add folder" from the function menu.

2 Enter folder name and press **[Set]**.

You can use 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters for a folder name. You must enter at least one character to create a folder. Entering characters —p.203

### Changing folder name

To change folder name, highlight a folder on the list of folders screen, select "Edit folder name" from the function menu and enter new name.

You can use 10 full-pitch or 20 half-pitch characters for a folder name.

You can only change the names for the folders that you created. You cannot change the names for predefined folders (Inbox, Trash box and Outbox) and the folder for mail-connected i-cuppli mail.

### Deleting a folder

Highlight a folder on the list of folders screen, select "Delete folder" from the function menu and enter your security code (p.21).

You cannot delete pre-defined folders (Inbox, Trash box and Outbox) and the folder for mail-connected i-cuppli.

However, if mail-connected i-cuppli has been deleted from the FOMA terminal and no mail stored in both Inbox and Outbox for mail-connected i-cuppli is protected, you can delete mail-connected i-cuppli folders. If you try to delete a folder for mail-connected i-cuppli, a message appears to ask you whether or not you want to delete. Select "YES" to delete.

If the folder you try to delete contains mail, a message appears to ask you if you want to delete it. Select "YES" to delete the folder with its content. If you wish to delete the folder but want to save the content, move the content to other folder before deleting the folder.

If you try to delete a folder that contains no mail and "Auto-sort" (see below) is activated for the folder, a message appears to ask you if you want to cancel auto-sorting. Select "YES" to deactivate "Auto-sort" and delete the folder.

If there is any protected mail within, you cannot delete the folder.

### Activating security for folder

You can activate security for each folder separately. Security code (p.21) is required to open each folder. For details, see p.218

## Choosing sent/received to move

<Moving mail>

<Example: To choose received mail to move>

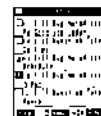
1 On the received mail list screen for source folder, select "Move this" from the function menu.

### To move a mail message

On the received mail details screen, display the mail you want to move, select "Move this" from the function menu and select a destination folder.

2 Select recipient folder.

3 Select mail you want to move.



Selected mail will be checked. You can check the selected mail again to unselect them. To unselect all mail messages, select "Release all" from the function menu. To select all mail messages, select "Select all" from the function menu.

4 Press **[Finish]** and select "YES".

- If you receive a mail while selecting a mail to be moved and the inbox is full, you will not receive the incoming mail and "Full" will appear. After moving the mail, carry out the i-mode check to receive that mail.
- SMS reports and SMS stored in FOMA card cannot be moved to other folder.

## Useful functions available with sent/received mail

### Phone To/Mail To/Web To function

By selecting phone number, mail address, URL or link to i-cuppli in mail message, you can make a phone call, access a website or startup software programs.

The following is accessible from within mail message:

Access	Description	See page
Phone number	Makes a voice or videophone call at the selected phone number (Phone To, AV Phone To)	p.222
Mail address	Composes a mail for the selected mail address (Mail To)	p.222
URL	Connects to a site of the selected URL (Web To)	p.222
Link to i-cuppli	Starts up the specified software (i-cuppli To)	p.222

### Changing the display order of sent/received mails

<Sorting display>

You can define the order of listing mail according to certain conditions.

You can select mail display as follows:

Sorting type	Order to display
Chronological ↑	The newest mail will be listed first.
Chronological ↓	The oldest mail will be listed first.
By address ↑	Senders' i-cupplids' mail addresses and phone numbers will be listed in alphabetical order.
By address ↓	Senders' i-cupplids' mail addresses and phone numbers will be listed in reverse alphabetical order.
By subject ↑	Subjects will be listed alphabetically or in kana syllabled order.
By subject ↓	Subjects will be listed in reverse alphabetical or in reverse kana syllabled order.

- If you exit the screen and display the list screen again, the screen will revert back to the original list (display in the chronological order with the newest mail first).

<Example: To display received mail in chronological ↓ order>

1 Select "Sort" from the function menu on the list of received mail screen.



## 2 Select the sort type.

To cancel sort condition  
Select "Display all" from the function menu.  
Mail messages are then displayed in the chronological order with the newest mail first.

- i-mode mail and SMS share the same Inbox and Outbox. Sorting applies to both i-mode mail and SMS.
- You can use both sorting and filtering at the same time. For example, if you want to display only unread mail chronologically on the list of received mail, select "Chronological ↓" from the Sort menu and then select "Unread" from the Filter menu.

### Searching sent/received mail

<Search mail>

You can search and display the mail that you want to read.  
You can search mail either by mail type or mail address/subject.

#### ■ Searching by type <Filter function>

Use Filter function to display only mail you want to read.

Filter category	Mail to be displayed	Available BOX
Unread	Unread i-mode mail and unread SMS	Inbox
Read	i-mode mail and SMS that you have read	Inbox
Protected	i-mode mail and SMS that is protected	Inbox/Outbox
Melody	i-mode mail that has a melody attached/attached	Inbox/Outbox
Image	i-mode mail that has an image attached	Inbox/Outbox
i-motion	i-mode mail that has a movie or i-motion attached (including i-motion mail before capturing movie/motion data)	Inbox/Outbox
i-cppp	i-mode mail that has i-cppp start-up information (i-cppp To) attached (Excludes received mail using mail connected i-cppp)	Inbox
SMS	SMS	Inbox/Outbox
Failed	i-mode mail and SMS that failed to transmit	Outbox

- If you use Filter function for search by mail address/subject, you can search consecutively for three times.

<Example: To display unread mail>

1 Select "Filter" from the function menu on the list of received mail screen.

2 Select filter category.

To cancel filter condition  
Select "Display all" from the function menu.  
Mail messages are then displayed in reverse chronological order.

- i-mode mail and SMS share the same Inbox and Outbox. Sorting and filtering apply to both i-mode mail and SMS.
- "i" icon indicates that display and replay are controlled by FOMA card. The mail with this icon can not be displayed after filtering by "Melody", "Image", "i-motion" or "i-cppp".
- You can use both filtering and sorting at the same time. For example, if you want to display only unread mail chronologically on the list of received mail, select "Unread" from the Filter menu and then select "Chronological ↓" from the Sort menu.

#### ■ Searching by mail address or subject

You can search mail by sender's mail address or subject.

1 Select "Search mail" from the function menu on the list of received mail.

2 Select the search method.

To search by sender's address  
Select "Search sender" and choose a search method.  
To search by entering an address manually, select "Enter address".  
Searching Phonebook → p.116  
To enter using address list → p.157

To search by subject  
Select "Search subject" and enter the subject to search.  
You can search by entering part of the subject.  
You can enter space(s) at the beginning of or in the middle of the string. Any space at the end of the string will be deleted.  
The search results will be displayed.  
A message will appear to inform you if there were no matches found.

- If you assign "No title", only mail with the words "No title" entered on the subject line will be sorted. The mail for which the sender did not specify a subject (and for this reason "No title" is displayed on the subject line) will not be sorted.
- You cannot search SMS by subject.

### Protecting sent/received mail

<Mail protection>

You can protect important mail to avoid having it accidentally deleted or overwritten.

- You can protect up to 500 received mail messages and up to 200 sent mail messages (including both i-mode mail and SMS). These numbers vary depending on the amount of data involved.

<Example: Protecting (or unprotecting) received i-mode mail>

1 Select "Protect ON/OFF" from the function menu on the details screen for the mail you want to protect.

Mail that has not been protected will be protected ("ON/OFF" icon will appear in the top right corner of the screen) and protected mail will be unprotected.  
You can also protect/unprotect mail by selecting "Protect ON/OFF" from the function menu on the list of received mail screen, the list of sent mail screen or the sent mail details screen.

To unprotect all mail protection  
Select "Unprotect all" from the function menu on the list of received mail or the list of sent mail screens, and then select "YES".

- If the number of received mail messages (including both i-mode mail and SMS) saved in FOMA terminal exceeds the maximum protecting capacity (p.21) the mail in the Trash box will be deleted by priority at the time you receive another mail transmission. If no mail is in the Trash box, unprotected received mail that has already been read will be deleted in "Chronological ↓" order.
- If the number of sent mail (including both i-mode and SMS) saved in FOMA terminal has exceeded the maximum number (p.21), unprotected sent mail will be deleted in "Chronological ↓" order.

## Deleting sent/received mail <Mail deletion>

Mail received or sent by FOMA terminal or unsent mail can be deleted.  
You can delete mail as follows:

Delete type	Description	Screen which can be used
Delete this/Delete	Delete 1 i-mode mail message or SMS	List of received/sent/draft mail Received/were mail details
Delete selected	You can select i-mode mail and SMS to be deleted from the list.	List of received/sent/draft mail
Delete read	Delete all i-mode mail and SMS in a folder that have already been read.	List of received mail
Move trash box	Move i-mode mail or SMS to the Trash box.	List screen of received mails/Detail screen of received mails
Delete all SMS-R	Delete all SMS reports in the Inbox.	List of received mail in the Inbox
Delete all	Delete all i-mode mail and SMS in a folder.	List of received/sent mail
	Delete all i-mode mail and SMS in the Draft box.	List of draft mail
Delete read	Delete all i-mode mail and SMS in all folders that have already been read.	List of received folders
Delete all (received)	You can completely delete the i-mode mails and SMS stored in all the folders of the Inbox.	List of received folders
Delete all (sent)	You can completely delete the i-mode mails and SMS stored in all the folders of the Outbox.	List screen of sent folders

### ■ Deleting one mail message

You can select one i-mode mail or SMS to delete.

- You cannot delete protected mails.

<Example: Deleting one received i-mode mail>

- 1 Highlight the mail you want to delete on the list screen of received mails, and select "Delete this" from the function menu. Select "YES".

You can also delete a mail by selecting "Delete this" from the function menu on the list screen of sent mails or the list screen of draft mails.

To delete one mail on the mail detail screen  
Select "Delete" from the function menu.

### ■ Deleting selected mail messages

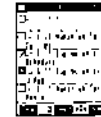
You can select mail to delete. You can select more than 1 i-mode mail/SMS messages to delete.

- You cannot select protected mails.

<Example: Selecting received i-mode mail messages to delete>

- 1 Select "Delete selected" from the function menu on the list of received mail screen.

## 2 Select mail you want to delete.



The selected mail is marked.  
When you select the marked mail again, it is unmarked. To unmark all the selected mails, select "Release all" from the function menu.  
When you select "Select all" from the function menu, you can select all the mails in the folder.  
You can also delete a mail by selecting "Delete selected" from the function menu on the list screen of sent mails or the list screen of draft mails.

## 3 Press [Finish] and then select "YES".

- If you receive a mail while selecting a mail to be deleted and Inbox is full, you will not receive the incoming mail and "F" will appear. After deleting the mail, carry out the i-mode check to receive that mail.

### Moving mail to the Trash box

You can move a mail you want to delete to the trash box. The moved mail is not deleted immediately so that you can move it back to the folder until it is deleted.

The moved mails to the trash box are primarily deleted when the Inbox becomes full. Select "Move trash box" from the function menu on the received mail list screen to select and trash mail in the same way as "Delete selected". When you select a mail that is moved to the trash box, a message appears confirming you that the mail is deleted automatically by priority when a mail is received. Select "YES" to move the mail to the trash box.

### ■ Deleting a group of mail messages

You can delete a group of mail (e.g. all mail messages in a folder or all read messages in a folder). You can also delete all SMS reports at once.

- If you delete all the mail in a folder, the folder will not be deleted. To delete a folder, see p.203.
- You cannot delete protected mails.

<Example: Deleting all SMS and i-mode mail messages in the Inbox>

- 1 Select "Delete all" from the function menu on the list screen of received mails and then enter the security code. Select "YES".

About security code → p.21

You can also delete a mail by selecting "Delete all" from the function menu on the list screen of draft mails.

To delete read mails in the folder

Select "Delete read" from the function menu and then select "YES".

To only delete all the SMS reports in the Inbox

Select "Delete all SMS-R" from the function menu and then enter the security code. Select "YES".

To delete all the received or sent mails

Select "Delete all" from the function menu on the list screen of received or sent folders and then enter the security code. Select "YES". The received or sent mails in all the folders are deleted.

To delete all the read mails

Select "Delete read" from the function menu on the list screen of received folders and then select "YES".

When you select "Delete read" or "Delete all", displaying the only mails specified in the filtering function, the only displayed mails are deleted.



### ■ Assigning mail address for sorting

You can assign mail addresses and phone numbers to received mail folders. You can refer to Phonebook or sent/received address history to assign these elements.

<Example: Referring to Phonebook when assigning conditions to received mail folder>

- 1 Highlight the received mail folder to specify sort conditions, and select "Auto-sort" from the function menu.
- 2 Select "Address sort" - "Look-up address" - "Phonebook" from the function menu to search Phonebook.  
Searching Phonebook → p.116
- 3 On the details screen for the Phonebook, select the mail address you want to register.



The mail address is then assigned as a sort condition.

To change assigned mail addresses or phone numbers  
Select them on the Auto-sort screen.

To switch Auto-sort screen display

On the Auto-sort screen, select "List setting" then "Name" or "Address".

If you choose "Name", names will be displayed if names are recorded for the addresses stored in your Phonebook. You can switch between "Name" and "Address" by pressing **[Set]**. → p.150

- Entire mail address including its domain name must be entered. Domain name is a character string after @.  
(Example) docomo.taro@docomo.ne.jp  
Please be aware that function will not work if you do not enter domain name.
- SMS specified to store in SMS reports and FOMA card cannot be sorted automatically.

### ■ Assigning group for sorting

You can register groups recorded in your Phonebook as an Auto-sort condition.

- 1 Highlight the received mail folder to assign sort conditions, select "Auto-sort" - "Address sort" - "Look-up group" from the function menu.
- 2 Select the group to assign.

A group is registered for auto-sort and **[G]** appears for the group.  
Group 00 cannot be selected. The group that has already been assigned cannot be assigned again.

### ■ Assigning subject for sorting

Register subject to be auto-sorted into received mail folder. If you receive mail with the subject you stored, the mail will be sorted automatically to the specified folder.

- 1 Highlight the received mail folder you want to assign sort conditions, and select "Auto-sort" - "Subject sort" from the function menu.
- 2 Enter subject and press **[Set]**.

The subject is then registered as a sort condition.

You can enter space(s) at the beginning or in the middle of the string. Any space at the end of the string will be deleted.  
The same subject cannot be assigned to other folder. A character string that contains only spaces cannot be used as a subject.

- If you assign "No title", only mail with the words "No title" entered on the subject line will be sorted. The mail for which the sender did not specify a subject (and for this reason "No title" is displayed for the subject) will not be sorted.
- If the subject of the received mail is included in the stored subject of the sort conditions of multiple folders, the mail is sorted in order of the folders displayed on the Inbox folder list.
- You cannot use this function for SMS.

### ■ To sort all mail to mail-connected I-cuppl folder

Sorting all mail messages to I-cuppl folder

- When a mail is sent or received, all of the sent/received mail will be saved in the I-cuppl folder set for "All-sort", enabling the start-up of mail-connected I-cuppl and checking of mail.

- 1 Highlight the mail folder you want to assign sort conditions. Select "Auto-sort" - "All sort" from the function menu.

A message appears to inform you that the sorted mail is supposed to be used for I-cuppl. Select "YES" to assign "All sort".

You cannot use "All sort" if you do not have I-cuppl folder.

"All sort" can be set for only 1 I-cuppl folder in Outbox and Inbox.

Although "All sort" does not override other sort conditions that you have set for other folders, all other mails except for mail of mail-connected I-cuppl will be sorted to a folder you assign "All sort".

### ■ Sorting mail that cannot be replied to

You can sort I-mode mail or SMS that cannot be replied to. Such mail or SMS is indicated by **[Fm?]**.

- 1 Highlight the received mail folder you want to assign sort condition, and select "Auto-sort" - "Reply Impossible" from the function menu.

You can assign "Reply Impossible" to only 1 folder in Outbox.

### Canceling sort conditions

You can cancel sort conditions such as mail addresses, phone numbers or subjects registered for "Auto-sort setting".

<Example: To cancel one mail address>

- On the Auto-sort screen, choose the mail address you want to release from auto sorting, select "Release this" from the function menu and select "YES".

- "Release this" : Releases one sort condition.
- "Release selected" : Releases selected sort conditions (mail addresses, phone numbers, Phonebook groups or subjects) by marking checkboxes.
- "Release all" : Releases all sort conditions.

### Storing header/signatures/quotation marks <Header/signature>

Default setting Headers/Signatures (Not stored) Quotation marks (Insert)

When you store the text that is initially placed in a message (Header) and the text like your name marked at the end (Signatures) in advance, you can easily paste them in the message of an I-mode mail. You can also edit symbols or texts (Quotation marks) marked before the text of the quoted mail when the received mail is replied. The quotation marks can be used to distinguish the new text from the quoted text.

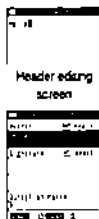
- You can register only 1 header and 1 signature.
- You cannot use header/signature/quotation marks for SMS.

- Select "Mail settings" ► "Header/Signature".



Enter a header, a signature and a quotation mark in each box.

- Mark the "Insert" box of the header/signature and select the Input column. Enter the header/signature and press [Set].

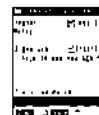


You can enter up to 120 full-pitch (240 half-pitch) characters for header and signature. A linefeed is counted as 1 full-pitch character.

Entering characters → p.308

If you do not want the header/pasted automatically  
Unmark the header or signature box.

- Select the Input column and enter the quotation mark to be changed and then press [Set].



You can enter up to 10 full-pitch (20 half-pitch) characters.

- Press [Finish].

- The characters of the Headers/Signatures/Quotation marks are counted as the input characters of the message text.
- If you execute "Add header", a header will be pasted without decoration. Therefore, depending on background colors, you may not be able to see header. In addition, if you execute "Add signature", a signature will be pasted in the color of the end of message and with its character size.
- You cannot use Headers/Signatures/Quotation marks in SMS.

### Adding header/signature

You can add a pre-defined header and signature (p.222) to your I-mode mail message.

- On the New mail screen, select "Add header" from the function menu.  
The selected header is pasted at the head of the message.
- Select "Add signature" from the function menu.  
Your signature is pasted at the end of the message.  
To check the header and signature that have been added, select the message to display.

- If the header and signature that you have added to I-mode mail contain half-pitch katakana or pictographs, these characters may not be displayed properly on the recipient's terminal. Do not use such characters if the receiving terminal is not an I-mode terminal.
- There is a line feed inserted between the text and the header and between the text and the signature. Each line feed is counted as 1 full-pitch character.
- If total number of characters of header, signature and message (including attached melodies and images) exceed 5,000 full-pitch or 10,000 half-pitch characters, you cannot add a header and signature.

## Setting i-mode center inquiry items <i-mode checking>

Default setting Inquire all

Setting the inquiry items for "i-mode checking".  
You can make each inquiry setting for "Mail" (i-mode mail), "Msg. Request" and "Msg. Free".

- 1 Select **[Menu]** (Menu) ► **[i-mode]** ► "Connection setting" ► "i-mode checking".
- 2 Select the item which you want to check and press **[Finish]**.



## Specifying size of character displayed <Character size>

Default setting Standard

Select character size for mail message displayed on the mail details screen.

- 1 Select **[F10]** ► "Mail settings" ► "Character size".
- 2 Select character size and press **[Select]**.

Standard : Displays the contents in the standard-sized characters.  
Small : Displays the contents in the small-sized characters.  
Large : Displays the contents in the large-sized characters.  
You can switch character size by holding down **[Left]** or **[Right]** for 1 or more seconds on the mail details screen.  
You can also switch character size by selecting "Character size" from the function menu on the mail details screen. Either action will change the preference settings. The setting can be changed in any way.  
If "Small" is set, all full-pitch and half-pitch characters are displayed in the same size.

## Specifying the number of lines to scroll

Default setting 1 line

You can specify the number of lines to scroll when you press **[Up]** on the mail details screen.

- 1 Select **[F10]** ► "Mail settings" ► "Scroll", and then select the number of scrolled lines.

1 line : The screen is scrolled by 1 line.  
3 lines : The screen is scrolled by 3 lines.  
5 lines : The screen is scrolled by 5 lines.  
You can also specify the number of lines to scroll by selecting "Scroll" from the function menu on the mail details screen. This action also changes the preference setting.

## Displaying message first <Message display>

Default setting Standard

You can choose whether to display the top line (received date/time or sent date/time) first or message first when you open mail.

- 1 Select **[F10]** ► "Mail settings" ► "Message display", and then select how the mails are displayed.

Standard : The top line (received date/time or sent date/time) of the mail is displayed first.  
From message : Displays the mails starting with the text.  
In case the message can be displayed within one page, all or part of the top line and the message appears, even if "From message" has been selected.

## Specifying the list screen display <Mail list display>

Default setting 2 lines

You can switch between "2 lines" and "1 line" to list mail.

- 1 Select **[F10]** ► "Mail settings" ► "Mail list disp."
- 2 line : Displays the mail list screen in 2 lines.  
1 line : Displays the mail list screen in 1 line.

## Notifying mail receiving message during terminal operation <Receiving display>

Default setting Operation preferred

You can set whether or not the receiving screen and received result screen are displayed by priority when a mail or Msg. Request/Free is received during an operation of the FOMA terminal.

- 1 Select **[F10]** ► "Mail settings" ► "Receiving display".
- 2 Select the display to be prioritized.

Alarm preferred : Displays the receiving screen and received result screen when a mail or Msg. Request/Free is received during an operation of the FOMA terminal.  
Operation preferred : Keep the operating screen when a mail or Msg. Request/Free is received during an operation of the FOMA terminal, instead of switching to the receiving screen and received result screen.

- When "Operation preferred" is set and a mail or Msg. Request/Free is received during an operation of the FOMA terminal, the incoming mail display and "[i-mode]" in the image window show that the mail or Msg. Request/Free is being received. A ring tone, LED flashing, vibrator or backlight flashing is not functioned.
- When you are using the functions of "Happy! Motion", "Chara-den", Camera, etc., the Receiving screen and Received result screen will not display when mail or Msg. Request/Free is received, even when "Alarm preferred" is set.

### Performing the setting to receive selected mails <Receive option setting>

Default setting OFF

You can select whether you want to receive only selected mail. If you do not choose this option, all mail messages will be delivered to your terminal automatically.

- This option only applies to i-mode mail. All SMS and Msg. Request/Free will be downloaded automatically.

- If setting the receive option to "ON", you cannot receive i-mode mails automatically.

1 Select (Menu) ► "Mail settings" ► "Receive option setting".

2 Choose the option and press (Select).

To download mail automatically  
Select "OFF".

To download only selected mail  
Select "ON".

If the receive option is set to ON, is displayed when a mail is sent to the Center. At this time, a FOMA terminal does not sound a ring tone or vibrate.

#### NOTE

- Even if you have selected "ON", "Check new messages" downloads all received i-mode mail messages. If you do not want to download i-mode mail when you activate "Check new messages", uncheck "Inquire" from "i-mode checking" (p.128).

### Storing addresses in the Mail member <Mail member registration>

Default setting Not stored

If you have stored more than one recipient in the Mail member of your FOMA terminal, that will greatly help you enter more than one recipient. All you have to do is specify the Mail member as the recipient.

- You can register up to 20 recipients in a Mail member group and up to 5 addresses can be recorded for each recipient.

<Example: Registering mail addresses using Phonebook>

1 Select (Menu) ► (Phonebook) ► "Mail member".

2 Select the item for which to store a mail address.

### 3 Highlight "<Not stored>" and select "Look-up address" - "Phonebook" from the function menu.

To store an address from the Sent address list  
Select "Sent address".

To store an address from the Received address list  
Select "Received address".

To store an address, typing it in  
Select "Edit address" and enter a mail address.

A mail address can be in a maximum of 50 half-width alphanumerical characters.

In the 64K data communications and packet communications, a Received call record cannot be stored in the Mail member.

### 4 Search in the Phonebook and select the mail address on the details screen of the Phonebook.

The selected mail address is stored in Mail member.

Searching in the Phonebook → p.116

To add more mail address, repeat Step 3 and 4.

#### Changing Mail member group name

Highlight a Mail member group name that you want to change on the Mail member list screen and select "Edit member name" from the function menu.

You can enter 10 half-width or 20 half-width characters.

If you delete all member names and press (Set), member names return to default.

#### Resetting Mail member group name

On the Mail member list display, highlight a mail member you want to reset. From the function menu, select "Reset member name" and "YES".

If you reset Mail member group name, the name returns to default name.

#### Displaying the mail address details screen

On the Mail member list screen, select a Mail member group that contains e-mail addresses and select a mail address on the list screen.

#### Editing mail addresses in Mail member group

Highlight the mail address you want to edit on either the mail address details screen of the list screen and press (Edit).

You can also edit mail address by highlighting it and select "Edit address" from the function menu.

To enter a mail address from the "Phonebook", "Sent address" or "Received address", choose a mail address you want to change on the Details or List display of the mail addresses and select "Look-up address" from the function menu. Select "YES", then choose the appropriate subject.

#### Deleting a mail address

On the Mail address display or list display, highlight a mail address you want to delete. Select "Delete this" from the function menu and "YES".

#### Deleting all mail addresses

On the Mail address details or list screen, select "Delete all" and "YES" from the function menu. "Delete all" does not delete the mail addresses of other Mail members. Also, even if "Delete all" had been conducted, list names will not be erased. To delete a list name, reset the list name.

### Setting the automatic melody playing <Auto melody play>

Default setting ON

You can set the attached/pasted melody to play automatically when you open the i-mode mail.

1 Select (Menu) ► "Mail settings" ► "Auto melody play".

ON : Plays a melody automatically when an i-mode mail is opened.

OFF : Does not play a melody automatically when an i-mode mail is opened.

### Setup of melody pasted to i-mode mail <Pasted melody>

Default setting Valid

You can specify to have melodies either played or saved.

- This only applies to the melodies pasted to i-mode mail (the melodies displayed with "🎵" icon on the mail details screen) and does not apply to melodies attached to i-mode mail.

#### 1 Select ► "Mail settings" ► "Pasted melody".

Valid : Enables you to play or save a melody.  
 Invalid : Disables you to play or save a melody so that the melody is displayed as a text in the message.  
 When "Invalid" is selected, the icon "🎵" changes to "📄" or "📄" on the mail list screen. On the mail details screen, a character string will be displayed instead of an icon.

### Starting up i-cppit from i-mode mail <i-cppit To>

Default setting Valid

You can set i-cppit to be initiated from i-mode mail.

#### 1 Select ► "Mail settings" ► "i-cppit To".

Valid : You can startup i-cppit.  
 Invalid : You cannot startup i-cppit.  
 If you choose "Invalid", "📄" icon changes to "📄" on the list of mail screen. On the mail details screen, no icon will be displayed and you cannot startup i-cppit.

### Setting up capturing of i-motion from i-mode mail <Pasted i-motion>

Default setting Valid

You can set i-motion that is pasted onto an i-mode mail message to be captured.

- This applies only to the i-motion mail that has not been downloaded to your terminal from the Center. This does not apply to the i-motion mail for which you have already downloaded data.

#### 1 Select ► "Mail settings" ► "Pasted i-motion".

Valid : You can capture i-motion.  
 Invalid : You cannot capture i-motion.  
 If you choose "Invalid", "📄" icon for i-motion changes to "📄" on the list of mail screen. On the mail details screen, no icon will be displayed and you cannot capture i-motion.

### Stopping i-motion from playing automatically <i-motion auto play>

Default setting ON

You can set i-motion to be played automatically when you capture i-motion from the received mail screen.

#### 1 Select ► "Mail settings" ► "i-motion auto play".

ON : i-motion will be played automatically after you capture it.  
 When "ON" is selected, some i-motions start playing automatically during downloading. A screen that notifies you of the completion of i-motion downloading appears when the playing is completed.  
 OFF : i-motion will not be played automatically after you capture it.  
 If you select "OFF", the i-motion capture completion screen will appear without playing the i-motion.

### Refusing to receive attachment file <Attached file>

Default setting Receive melody  
Receive image

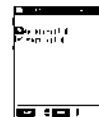
You can select whether to receive files attached to i-mode mail.

- If you choose not to receive attachment file, the file will be deleted at the i-mode Center. You will not be informed that the file has been deleted.
- This applies only to melodies and images attached to mail and does not apply to melodies pasted onto mail message.

#### 1 Select ► "Mail settings" ► "Attached file".

Specify whether or not you want to receive "Melody-valid" and "Image-valid".

#### 2 Mark the attached files to be received and then press [Finish].



### Setting the display method when receiving a speed photo mail <Speed photo auto display>

Default setting ON

You can select whether or not a picture (still image) is displayed automatically when a Speed photo mail is received during a voice call.

#### 1 Select ► "Mail settings" ► "Speed photo auto disp.".



## Checking the contents of the mail settings <Mail settings>

You can check mail setting by "Mail settings".

### 1 Select ► "Mail settings" ► "Check settings".

The following settings in "Mail settings" will be displayed.

- Scroll
- Character size
- Mail list display
- Message display
- Security
- Auto melody play
- Attached file
- Receive option
- Receiving display
- i-moon auto play
- Speed photo mail
- Melody
- i-moon
- "lookup To"
- SMS report request
- SMS validity period

## Resetting the mail settings to the default settings <Reset settings>

You can reset "Mail settings" to default.

The category that you can reset and the condition after reset settings are as follows:

Category	At the reset setting
Scroll	1 line
Character size	Standard
Mail list display	3 lines
Message display	Standard (displayed from the top of the mail)
Security	Inbox: OFF Outbox: OFF Draft: OFF
Auto melody play	ON
Attached file	Melody-mail: ON Image-mail: ON
Receive option	OFF
Header/Signature	Header: Not stored Pasted automatically Signature: Not stored Pasted automatically Quotation mark: > Operation preferred
Receiving display	Operation preferred
i-moon auto play	ON
Speed photo mail	ON
Melody	Valid
i-moon	Valid
"lookup To"	Valid
SMS report request	OFF
SMS validity period	3 days

### 1 Select ► "Mail settings" ► "Reset settings" and then enter the security code.

About security codes → p.21


A message appears asking if you want to reset the setting. Select "YES" to reset the setting, returning to the default setting.

## Performing optional settings

You can set optional functions for i-mode mail as follows:

Function name	Description
Confirm Mail Address	Check your mail address
Change Mail Address	Change your mail address
Reset mail Address	Reset your mail address to phone number
Register a Secret Code	Assign a secret code to your mail address
Limit Mail Size	Set a limit for size of mail data to receive
Mail Rejecton	Set to refuse certain mail
Mail Suspend	Stop mail functions in the i-mode Center.

For details, refer to [FDMA (i-mode User's Manual)].

- 1 Select  ► "iMenu" ► "English" ► "Options" ► "Mail Settings".
- 2 Select the item you want to set and follow the procedure.

Compose and send SMS


## Composing and Sending SMS

### Composing and sending SMS

This section explains how to enter a mail recipient using your Phonebook.

Enter phone number for SMS recipient.

### 1 Select ► "Compose SMS".

 will appear on the standby display.

### 2 Select "Look-up address" - "Phonebook" from the function menu to search a Phonebook.

Phonebook search → p.116

You can only enter 1 recipient for SMS.

To enter a recipient's address by typing it in manually

On the new SMS screen, type the address manually in the address box.

To enter using a list of addresses → p.157

To change a recipient you have entered

Select the recipient and reenter another address on the new SMS screen.

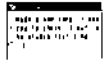
You can also change (overwrite) a recipient by selecting "Look-up address" from the function menu on the new SMS screen.

You cannot send SMS to a recipient you have specified in the following circumstances:

- The recipient's address contains something other than numbers, "(", ")", "!", "!", and "x".
- The recipient's address contains a space.
- The recipient's address contains multiple "x".
- The recipient's address starts with "x". (You can send a SMS to an address having "x" after "#31#" or "#31#".)
- The number of entered characters exceeds 20 (not counting a (international access code)).

If you have "184", "186", "#31#" or "#31#" at the head of a recipient's address, a message will appear to advise you to delete such entry. To send SMS, select "YES" to delete it.

### 3 Select "Ⓜ" and enter message. Press **Ⓜ** (Set).



Although you can enter up to 80 full-pitch characters on the message input screen, you can only send up to 70 full-pitch characters. If the message contains only half-pitch characters (excluding symbols such as [ , ] , ! , - and =), you can send up to 160 characters.

If your message exceeds this limit, a message appears to tell you that the surplus portion will be deleted. Select "YES" to delete the portion and send the mail.

A space is also counted as 1 character.

If you select "Erase message" from the function menu, you can delete only the message of the mail.

To delete SMS that you are editing, select "Delete".

Entering characters—p.100

### 4 Press **Ⓜ** (Send) on the new SMS screen.

SMS will be sent. During the transmission, an animation will be displayed on your screen. Press "OK" to return to the mail menu screen.

To save unfinished SMS temporarily

While composing SMS, select "Save" from the function menu.

The SMS you have been writing will be saved in the Draft box. You can save up to 10 (including i-mode mail) messages. You can open a message later and edit if needed before sending it.

To check SMS content before sending it (Preview)

While composing SMS, select "Preview" from the function menu.

You can check SMS recipient and message.

To edit unsent and sent SMS —p.155

To copy message body —p.155

If you press **Ⓜ** and **Ⓜ** without sending mail, a message will appear informing you that the content will be deleted and editing session will terminate.

#### About SMS report (transmission notice) and SMS report display

If "SMS report request" (p.223) is "ON", you will receive a SMS report after SMS is sent. Although SMS report will be saved in the Inbox, the SMS report is also saved for sent SMS and you can confirm that the SMS you sent has been delivered to the recipient.

Display SMS with SMS report ( **Ⓜ** ) and select "Disp SMS" from the function menu.

You can also display the SMS report by selecting SMS report from the list of received mail. **Ⓜ** SMS report will be displayed by subject.

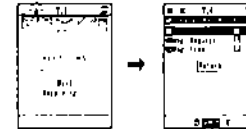
- If the number of sent mail saved in your FDMA terminal (including both i-mode mail and SMS) exceeds the maximum limit (p.21), the oldest mail will begin to be overwritten by new mail. However, protected mail will not be overwritten. We recommend that you protect the mail you want to keep. —p.211
- If "Keypad dial lock" (p.205) is active, you cannot enter a recipient without either using the Phonebook, sent address list, sent address history or redial records.
- If "Restrict dialing" (p.141) is set, you cannot search a phone number that is not specified for "Restrict dialing" by referring your Phonebook.
- Radio wave condition may cause insufficient display for the receiver.
- If you edit SMS you have already sent and resend, "SMS report request" and "SMS validity period" settings for this SMS will be the same as the ones when this SMS was originally sent.
- You can set "SMS report request" (p.223) to receive SMS report to check if recipient received your SMS. You can also set "SMS report request" by selecting "SMS report request" from the function menu. "SMS report request" and "SMS valid per." settings you specified on the function menu will also be saved in the Draft box.
- Your caller ID will be sent to the recipient when SMS is sent, even if "Notify caller ID" is set to "OFF".

## Receiving SMS

If your FOMA terminal is within communication range, SMS is automatically delivered to you from the SMS Center.

- Up to 1000 mail messages, including received i-mode mail and SMS, can be stored in your FOMA terminal. The maximum number of mail messages you can store is between 21 and 1000 depending on the amount of mail data. You can also save up to 20 SMS on a FOMA card.
- You can select your favorite ring tone to notify you of arriving mail using "Select ring tone" (p.163) or change the blink pattern by using "Illumination" (p.185).
- Short mail sent from mova i-mode terminal will be received as SMS at FOMA terminal.
- If you receive SMS during FOMA terminal operations, the receiving screen will not appear and you can continue with FOMA operation by default. Appearance of "E" icon notifies you of arriving mail without setting off ring tone, LED light, vibrator or display light. (If you have your FOMA terminal folded, a blinking icon on the Image window and display light will activate to notify you of the arrival of mail.)
- You can also set to sound the ring tone and display the receiving screen whenever SMS arrives during FOMA terminal operations. →p.224

### 7 When you receive SMS, "E" icon blinks and the screen displays "Mail Receiving...".



After downloading of mail is complete, the number of received mail messages or Msg. Request/Free will be displayed on the received result screen. Select "Mail" to display a list of received mail. If no action is taken for 15 seconds, you will be returned to the previous screen. This 15-second delay can be changed by "Mail/Msg. ring time" function (p.233). Ring tone volume will be as set for "Mail/Message" of "Ring volume" (p.73).

- Once the number of received mail saved in your FOMA terminal (including both i-mode mail and SMS) exceeds the maximum limit (p.21), incoming mail will automatically overwrite mail in the Trash box, the oldest received mail. However, unread mail and protected mail will not be overwritten. We recommend that you protect mail you want to retain. →p.211
- Received mail being displayed (on the received mail list screen or the detail screen) will not be overwritten (even if you switch tasks during display). If you receive mail when list screen or detail screen for received mail is being displayed, mail in the Trash box, the oldest mail other than the 1 on display (except unread/protected mail) will be overwritten.
- SMS stored in FOMA card will not be overwritten.
- The priority of ring tone and illumination settings when you receive SMS is as follows (1: has highest priority).
  - ① "Utilities (Phonebook)" specified for each phone number → p.120
  - ② "Utilities (Group)" specified for each group
  - ③ "Select ring tone" and "Illumination" → p.163 and p.185
- If you receive more than one SMS messages at the same time, ring tone and illumination will activated under the conditions specified for the last received mail.
- If you receive short mail from i-mode terminal of the mova service, the phone number of the sender will appear. However, if the number is not notified, the reason not for notifying (p.66) will be displayed.

## Receiving SMS stored in the center

### <Check new SMS>

- SMS that has arrived at the i-mode Center is automatically forwarded to your FOMA terminal. If your FOMA terminal is not available to receive mail (e.g. the terminal is off, "E" is displayed on your screen or memory is full), the mail will be retained at the SMS Center. "Check new SMS" allows you to download SMS stored at the Center.
- When "E" is displayed, you cannot check SMS.

## 1 Select [SMS] ▶ "Check new SMS".



"E" will be displayed on the standby display. "SMS Checking" appears during checking. When a message notifying you that checking has ended appears, press [Select]. If a SMS is stored at the Center, automatic downloading will start. After Checking new SMS, automatic downloading may not start right away.

### To stop checking

Hold down [Stop] for 1 or more seconds.

SMS may be downloaded depending on how long it took to initiate the stop checking command.

- "E" and "M" icons indicate that your FOMA terminal cannot receive any more i-mode mail or SMS. Delete unnecessary mail or Msg. Request/Free, open unread mail or deactivate protection (p.211) until these icons disappear. The oldest mail or Msg. Request/Free you have read or deactivated the protection on, will be overwritten by new arriving messages.
- SMS stored in the SMS Center may not be included in the number of received SMS that is displayed while checking for new SMS.

## Displaying new SMS

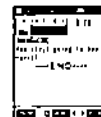
If your FOMA terminal is within communication range, SMS is automatically delivered to you from the SMS Center. "E" will appear in the upper portion of the screen when your FOMA terminal receives SMS from the Center.

- The beginning of the SMS message will be shown on the list of received SMS as its title.
- The title for received SMS report (transmission notice) will be "SMS report".

## 1 Select [SMS] ▶ "Inbox" ▶ "Inbox".

"E" will appear on the standby display. If you add any folder, select the folder on the Inbox folder list screen. The received mail list screen will be displayed.

## 2 Select mail you want to view.



To view previous mail or next mail

Press [Left] on the mail details screen.

If the received SMS contains characters that cannot be displayed, spaces will be shown for those characters.

Press [Right] to return to the list of received mail.

### Standby display when you receive mail



When you receive SMS or SMS report, "E" will appear on Standby display. If you select this icon, "New mail" appears. However, if you receive mail while you are viewing Inbox, this icon may not appear. Select the icon to display the list of received mail. If you receive SMS when your FOMA terminal is closed, a message appears to inform you that mail has arrived in the message window — p.182

- You can use information highlighted in the SMS message to make a phone call or compose new i-mode mail.
- Phone number for the sender of SMS you are viewing is highlighted. If you press [Select] when the phone number is highlighted, you can make a voice call or videophone call to that number (Phone To/AV Phone To function). If the sender's phone number is stored in your Phonebook, the stored "Name" will be highlighted. You can also make a call in the same manner.
- SMS report will be delivered to you only if you have requested it through "SMS report request" (p.228).
- You can view the mail information (sender, subject and datetime it arrived at the SMS Center) without opening it by selecting "Mail info" from the function menu on the list of received mail.
- You can paste a phone number for SMS sender on Standby display as desktop icon. You can use this icon to compose new SMS addressed to that phone number. Phone number with "Fax" cannot be pasted as a desktop icon.

## Replying/Forwarding received SMS

You can reply/forward SMS.

- For details, refer to replying (p.183)/forwarding (p.185) i-mode mail. (You cannot enter subject.)
- If "Keypad dial lock" (p.205) is active, you cannot reply. However, if the sender's phone number is registered in your Phonebook, you can reply to the SMS.

<Example: To reply to SMS>

## 1 Display the mail detail screen for the SMS that you want to reply to and press [Reply].



## 2 Edit message and send.

For further operations, see p.193.

**NOTE**

- "Reply with quote" and "Reply with ref" cannot be used for SMS.
- You cannot reply to SMS that was sent from a phone that has no caller ID, a call from a payphone, or calls in which the ID cannot be distinguished.
- You cannot reply to/forward the SMS report.
- If you reply to or forward SMS stored in FOMA card, "i" and "f" icons do not appear on the list of received mail and the received mail details screen and "i" icon remains on.

### Setting SMS

You can request SMS report and specify SMS validity period.

**To request SMS report** <SMS report request>

Default setting OFF

You can set SMS report (transmission notice) to be delivered to you when you send SMS.

- 1 Select > "Mall settings" > "SMS report request".
- 2 Select "ON".

ON : You will receive SMS report (transmission notice) after you send SMS.  
OFF : You do not receive SMS report (transmission notice).

**NOTE**

- You can also request an SMS report by selecting "SMS report request" from the function menu on the new SMS screen. However, this applies only to the new SMS you are currently composing.

**Specifying SMS validity period** <SMS validity period>

Default setting 3 days

● You can specify the length of time that SMS you sent will be kept at the SMS Center.

- 1 Select > "Mall settings" > "SMS validity period".
- 2 Specify the length.

**NOTE**

- You can also specify SMS validity period by selecting "SMS validity period" from the function menu on the new SMS screen. However, this applies only to the new SMS you are currently composing.

## Selecting the SMS center

<SMS center selection>

You usually do not need to change this setting

Default setting DoCoMo

You can select to use either DoCoMo's SMS Center or other company's SMS Center.

<Example: Using other company's SMS center>

- 1 (Menu) > > "Connection setting" > "SMS center selection".

DoCoMo : Uses the SMS center provided by DoCoMo.  
User defined : Uses the SMS center provided by other company.

To return to the default setting (DoCoMo)

Select "Reset" and then enter the security code (p.21). Press [Set].

A confirmation message appears. Select "YES" to reset the setting.

When you select "Reset", the contents specified in the "User defined" are deleted.

- 2 Select "User defined" and then enter the address of the SMS Center, Press [Set].

- 3 Select "Type of number".

Select either "International" or "Unknown".

**NOTE**

- When you make improper settings for the SMS center, SMS cannot be sent through.
- When "i" or "f" is contained in the entered address of the SMS Center, you cannot select "International" of "Type of number".

UIM operation

## Saving SMS in the FOMA Card

You can move or copy SMS stored in your FOMA terminal to FOMA card. You can also move or copy SMS stored in FOMA card to your FOMA terminal.

- You can save up to 20 SMS (including both received and sent) in a FOMA card.

## Composing/Sending I-mode mail

<Example: Moving SMS stored in Inbox folder to FOMA card>

- 1 Highlight the mail you want to move on the list screen of received mail and then select "UIM operation" from the function menu.
- 2 Select the operation and then select "YES".

Move to UIM : Moves SMS from the FOMA terminal (phone) to a FOMA card.

Copy to UIM : Copies SMS from the FOMA terminal (phone) to a FOMA card.

If you move or copy received SMS to FOMA card, the SMS will be displayed in the inbox folder.

You can move or copy SMS by selecting "UIM operation" from the function menu on the list of sent mail screen, the sent mail details screen or the received mail details screen.

- When you remove the battery pack, the date/time of the sent SMS that are stored in the FOMA card will be deleted and displayed at the end of the list. However, the date/time of the sent SMS saved with the SMS report will not be deleted.
- If you move or copy SMS that have replied/forwarded to FOMA card, "M" or "F" icon changes to "C".
- The SMS you have moved or copied to FOMA card cannot be protected. If you move or copy protected SMS, the protection will be released in FOMA card.
- If there is SMS report for sent SMS, SMS and SMS reports included in the sent SMS will be moved or copied to FOMA card.
- SMS reports in the inbox cannot be moved or copied to FOMA card.
- If there are already 20 SMS in the FOMA card, "M" or "F" icons will appear in the upper portion of the screen. You cannot move or copy any more SMS to the FOMA card.
- You can also use accessory "UIM operation" (p.130) to copy SMS.

### Moving or copying SMS in FOMA card to your FOMA terminal

<Example: To move SMS in FOMA card to Inbox folder>

**1** Highlight the mail you want to move to the FOMA terminal on the list screen of received mails and then select "UIM operation" from the function menu.

**2** Select the operation and then select "YES".  
 Move from UIM : Moves SMS from a FOMA card to the FOMA terminal (phone)  
 Copy from UIM : Copies SMS from a FOMA card to the FOMA terminal (phone)  
 You can move or copy SMS by selecting "UIM operation" from the function menu on the list of the sent mail screen, the sent mail details screen or the received mail details screen.

- When a sent SMS has SMS report, both the SMS and SMS report included in the SMS can be moved or copied to the FOMA terminal (phone) together.
- When the maximum storable limit (p.21) of received/sent mails exceeds, you cannot move or copy SMS to the FOMA terminal (phone).
- You can also use accessory "UIM operation" (p.130) to copy SMS.

Msg. Request/Free

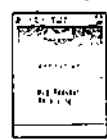
## Receiving a Message

When FOMA terminal is in the service area, Msg. Request/Free is automatically sent by I-mode Center.

- Up to 100 of received Msg. Request/Free can be saved in FOMA terminal. The number of Msg. Request that can be saved varies within a range from 20 to 100 and the number of Msg. Free within a range from 10 to 100, depending on the amount of the data.
- The "Select ring tone" (p.163) feature allows you to set a ring tone so that your favorite sound rings. Furthermore, you can change the flashing pattern of the illumination when you receive a Msg. Request/Free in "illumination" (p.185).

### Auto display (default) setting

- When you do not want to maintain the auto display, select "OFF" in "Message auto display" (p.122).
- You can change the setting to sound the ring tone and display the Msg. Request/Free receiving screen when you receive Msg. Request/Free during a call or I-mode. — p.224



- "M" or "F" flashes and "Msg. Request Receiving" or "Msg. Free Receiving" appears.
- When received, the icons start lighting.
- To stop receiving Msg. Request/Free, press [END] for one second or more. However, Msg. Request/Free may be received, depending on the timing.



- When received, the number of received mails of Msg. Request/Free is displayed on the received result screen for about 15 seconds. The time displayed depends on the settings in "Mail/Msg. ring time" (p.233).
- If you select "Msg. Request" or "Msg. Free" and press [Select], the screen of Msg. Request list or Msg. Free list will be displayed.



- If you receive the Msg. Request/Free from the standby display, the received Msg. Request/Free appears for about 15 seconds. However, if an I-mode group function (i-mode or I-urp) is running on the standby display, Msg. Request/Free is not automatically displayed. The FOMA does not automatically display a Msg. Request/Free mail if received earlier than on the standby display.
- With the Msg. Request/Free displayed, you can scroll the screen to display the contents of the Msg. Request/Free.
- If you do not perform any operation for about 15 seconds, you will go back to the standby display.

### Non auto display

When you received a Msg. Request/Free while you are performing some operation in your FOMA terminal, the receiving screen is not displayed by default so that you can continue the operation. The ring tone, LED lighting, vibrator and display light flashing will be OFF but "M" and "F" icons will indicate that you have received a Msg. Request/Free.

**Icons of Msg. Request/Free**  
 The "M" or "F" icon warns you that the FOMA terminal can no longer receive Msg. Request/Free. Read unread Msg. Request (or Msg. Free) until the icon disappears or select OFF for the protection setting (p.109). If messages are read or unprotected, they will be overwritten from the oldest message list when receiving a new message.

- When the number of Msg. Request/Free saved in the FOMA terminal exceeds the maximum limit (p.103), Msg. Request/Free is automatically overwritten in order from the oldest message list when a new message is received. However, unread messages and protected messages are not overwritten. The necessary message should be protected.
- Messages being displayed (on the Msg. Request/Free list screen or details screen) are not overwritten (including the case where the task is switched while messages are displayed). When you receive a Msg. Request/Free while the Msg. Request/Free list screen or details screen is displayed, messages are overwritten in order from the oldest message list (excluding unread messages and protected ones) except the message being displayed.
- Even if Msg. Request/Free has been displayed automatically, it will be displayed as an unread message on the Msg. Request/Free list screen. However, if you scroll the display during the automatic display, the Msg. Request/Free will be displayed as a read message on the Msg. Request/Free list screen.
- Melody is not automatically played when the Msg. Request/Free is automatically displayed.
- If you received a Msg. Request and a Msg. Free at the same time, the ring tone specified in "Msg. Request" or "Select ring tone" (p.163) is activated.
- The volume of the ring tone is based on the setting specified in "Mail/Message" of "Ring volume" (p.79).

### Displaying a new message

Received Msg. Request/Free is saved to the "Message" of the I-mode menu.

- "C" or "D" appears on the upper part of the screen when your FOMA terminal has received a message.
- When the FOMA card is replaced with another one or the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on with the FOMA card removed, you will not be able to display the details screen of the Msg. Request/Free with attached or pasted melodies and images. You will be able to display the Msg. Request/Free when the original FOMA card is inserted. → p.19



<Example: Reading Msg. Request>

1 Select  ► "Message" ► "Msg. Request".

To read Msg. Free  
Select "Msg. Free".

2 Select the message you want to display.




Press  to display the previous or next Msg. Request on the Msg. Request details screen.  
Press  on the Msg. Request details screen to return the Msg. Request list screen.

- "OK" or "Cancel" key, radio buttons, checkboxes, text boxes, pull-down menus or select boxes may appear in some Msg. Request/Free. In this case, follow the same procedure as you were on a site. → p.34
- When you turn on your FOMA terminal, press a key, or Msg. Request/Free is received, the backlight will light for about 15 seconds (The lighting period may change depending on the setting for "Mail Msg. ring time" (p.203). However, when the screen displays the text of Msg. Request/Free, the lighting period may change depending on the length of displayed texts. If you select "OFF" for the "Lighting" setting in "Display light" (p.183), the backlight does not light.

### Setting how received Msg. Request/Free will be automatically displayed <Message auto display>

Default setting    Msg. Req. preferred

You can set the way of auto display when Msg. Request/Free is received.

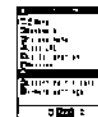
1 Select  ► "I-mode settings" ► "Message auto display".

- Msg. Req. preferred : Gives priority to Msg. Request to be automatically displayed.
- Msg. Free preferred : Gives priority to Msg. Free to be automatically displayed
- Msg. Request only : Automatically displays only Msg. Request
- Msg. Free only : Automatically displays only Msg. Free.
- OFF : Does not automatically display messages

## Inquiring about Received Message at the Center

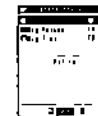
- Msg. Request/Free delivered to the i-mode center will be automatically sent to your FOMA terminal. However, Msg. Request/Free is stored at the i-mode center when the FOMA terminal is OFF, "OFF" is displayed, the memory is full, you are making a videophone call or the remote is monitoring. If "E" or "F" icons appear after Msg. Request/Free is stored in the i-mode center, go to "Check new message" to receive them. You can receive both the i-mode mail and the Msg. Request/Free stored in the i-mode center in this method.
- You can also check new messages by selecting "Check new message" on the mail menu or hold down **[MENU]** for 1 second or more when the standby display is shown.
- The item which you inquire is set in "i-mode checking" (p.128).

### 1 Select **[MENU]** ► "Check new message".



"E", "F" and "G" start lighting, displaying the message "Checking..." and you can receive i-mode mails and Msg. Request/Free.  
To cancel the checking operation  
Hold down **[MENU]** for 1 second or more.  
When you cancel the checking operation, however, you may receive the message depending on the timing of cancellation.

### 2 Check how many new i-mode mail and Msg. Request/Free you have received.



#### Icons of Msg. Request/Free

When "E" (or "F") is displayed, Msg. Request/Free are stored in the i-mode Center. When the memory is full to store Msg. Request/Free in the i-mode Center, "G" (or "H") appears.

- When "E" is displayed, you cannot check new messages.
- When "E", "F", "G" or "H" are displayed, your FOMA terminal can no longer receive i-mode mails or Msg. Request/Free. Delete unnecessary mails or Msg. Request/Free or read unread Msg. Request/Free until the icon disappears, or select OFF for the protection setting (p.109). If messages are read or unprotected, they will be overwritten from the oldest message first when receiving a new message.
- The number of storable Msg. Request/Free and storage period in the i-mode Center is as follows.

	Number of storable messages (max.)	Storage period (max.)
Msg. Request	300	72 hours
Msg. Free	300	72 hours

- When the above limit is exceeded, the messages will be deleted in order from the oldest message.
- Even when some Msg. Request/Free is stored in the i-mode Center, "E" (or "F") may not be displayed. (e.g. A message which is delivered when the FOMA terminal is OFF or "OFF" is displayed).
  - I-mode mail or Msg. Request/Free stored in the i-mode Center may not be included in the number of received i-mode mails or Msg. Request/Free that is displayed when checking for new messages.



## Displaying Messages in a Message Box

### Viewing the message list/details screens

Msg. Request/Free screens are displayed as follows:

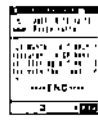
- The icons displayed on the Msg. Request/Free list screen are used on the Msg. Request/Free details screen as well, though some icons are not displayed.



Msg. Request/Free list screen  
(2 line)



Msg. Request/Free list screen  
(1 line)



Msg. Request/Free details  
screen

① Indicates the condition of the Msg. Request/Free

- Unread Msg. Request/Free
- Read Msg. Request/Free
- Unread and protected Msg. Request/Free
- Read and protected Msg. Request/Free

② Indicates received date and time

- 1- Any Msg. Request/Free received on the day indicated by the time
- 2- Any Msg. Request/Free received by the day before is indicated with the date

③ Indicates attached or pasted files

- Indicates that melody is attached or pasted
- Indicates that multiple melodies are attached or pasted and that some of the data is incorrect
- Indicates that all the attached or pasted melody data is incorrect

Indicates that an image is attached

Indicates that multiple images are attached and that some of the data is incorrect

Indicates that all the attached image data is incorrect. Also, it is displayed when "Image display" (p.129) is set to "OFF"

Indicates that multiple data files are pasted

The following icons are displayed when the list screen is set as 1 line

- Indicates that data is attached or pasted
- Indicates that data is attached or pasted and that some of the data is incorrect
- Indicates that all the attached or pasted data is incorrect
- Indicates the lines

### Changing the way Msg. Request/Free is displayed <Sorting display/Filtering function>

You can change the order of received Msg. Request/Free in accordance with the purpose or display only the Msg. Request/Free that can meet the specific condition.

Function	Setting	Type of display	Setting	Type of category
Sorting display	Sort	Switch the order of displayed Msg. Request/Free	Chronological ↑	Sorts in newer order
			Chronological ↓	Sorts in older order
Filtering function	Filter	Switching the Msg. Request/Free list screen to only display Msg. Request/Free that match the specified conditions	Unread	Displays unread messages only
			Read	Displays read messages only
			Protected	Displays protected messages only
			Melody	Displays messages with attached melodies only
			Image	Displays messages with attached images only

- Even if you change the way Msg. Request/Free are displayed using the sorting display or filtering function, the screen will return to the newer order ("Display all") if you end that screen and display each list screen again.
- For the detailed operation procedures, see the Sorting display/Filtering function for I-mode mail. (p.208 and 209).

<Example: Displaying Msg. Request in older order>

1 Select "Sort" from the function menu of the Msg. Request list screen.

Select "Display all" from the function menu to return to the original display (all messages are displayed from the newest to oldest).

2 Select "Chronological ↓".

Messages are sorted in older order.

- You can use the sorting display and the filtering function together. For example, to view only the unread mails in order from oldest to newest, select "Unread" in the Filter menu and then "Chronological ↓" in the Sort menu.

### Reloading Images in message

### <Reload Image>

When is displayed, not loading the image in the text of Msg. Request/Free, reload the image to display it.

About image display on sites → p.45

1 Display the Msg. Request/Free details screen and then select "Reload Image" from the function menu.

The "Reload image" feature allows you to reload only the images added to the text. Attached images cannot be reloaded. Images displayed with cannot be reloaded.

### Setting for melody replay when Msg. Request/Free is opened <Auto melody play>

Default setting ON

You can set whether or not an attached/pasted melody will be automatically played when Msg. Request/Free is opened.

1 Select > "I-mode settings" > "Auto melody play".


- ON : Plays the melody automatically.
- OFF : Does not play the melody automatically.

## Setting the pasted melody <Pasted melody/Msg.>

Default setting Valid

You can set whether or not the melody pasted on Msg. Request/Free can be played/saved.

- This setting applied only to melodies pasted on Msg. Request/Free (melodies with icon (♫)). It does not apply to the melodies attached to Msg. Request/Free.


1 Select  ► "I-mode settings" ► "Pasted melody/Msg."

Valid : The pasted melody can be played/saved.  
Invalid : The pasted melody cannot be played/saved.  
If "Pasted melody/Msg." is "Invalid", the melody pasted in the message will be displayed by a character string.

## Setting the number of lines on the list screen <Message list display>

Default setting 2 lines

You can switch the format of Msg. Request/Free list screen between 2 lines and 1 line.

1 Select  ► "I-mode settings" ► "Message list display".

2 lines : Displays 2 lines per item.  
1 line : Displays 1 line per item.

## Protecting messages <Message protection>

You can protect Msg. Request/Free you want to keep. The protected Msg. Request/Free cannot be overwritten or deleted.

- You can protect up to 50 (each) Msg. Request/Free in your FOMA terminal. The number of Msg. Request/Free that can be protected depends on the amount of data of Msg. Request/Free.

<Example: Protecting Msg. Request>

1 Display the Msg. Request list screen.

2 Highlight Msg. Request you want to protect (or unprotect) and select "Protect ON/OFF" from the function menu.

Unprotected Msg. Request will be protected (Ⓜ/Ⓜ) is displayed on the left side of time or date), while protected Msg. Request will be unprotected.



- When the number of Msg. Request/Free saved in the FOMA terminal exceeds the maximum limit (p.103), unprotected and Msg. Request/Free is automatically overwritten in order from the oldest message first when a new message is received.
- You can also protect/unprotect Msg. Request/Free even when you select "Protect ON/OFF" from the function menu on the Msg. Request details screen (or Msg. Free details screen).
- When you select "Unprotect all" from the function menu on the Msg. Request list screen (or Msg. Free list screen), protected Msg. Request (or Msg. Free) will be all unprotected.

## Deleting messages <Message deletion>

You can delete received Msg. Request/Free. Select the following method to delete Msg. Request/Free. For detailed operation procedure, see "Deleting Mail" (p.212).

Type of deletion	Description
Delete this	Deletes one Msg. Request/Free
Delete selected	Deletes Msg. Request/Free that has been selected.
Delete read	Deletes Msg. Request/Free that has already been read
Delete all	Deletes all Msg. Request/Free.

<Example: Delete one Msg. Request>

1 Displaying the Msg. Request list screen.

2 Highlight the Msg. Request you want to delete, and then select "Delete this" from the function menu.

A message appears asking whether it is OK to delete the Msg. Request. Select "YES" to delete the Msg. Request and a message appears notifying you that the deletion has been completed.  
To cancel the deleting operation  
Select "NO".

- Protected Msg. Request/Free cannot be deleted.
- If you perform "Delete read" or "Delete all" while only Msg. Request (or Msg. Free) specified by filter function is displayed, all of the unprotected or read Msg. Request (or Msg. Free) are deleted from the displayed Msg. Request (or Msg. Free).
- You can also delete Msg. Request/Free by selecting "Delete" from the function menu on the Msg. Request/Free details screen.

## Checking the number of saved Msg. Request/Free <No. of messages>

You can check the number of saved/unread/protected Msg. Request (or Msg. Free). The number of the following items can be checked:

Displayed item	Displayed contents
All	The number of all received Msg. Request (or Msg. Free) is displayed.
Unread	The number of unread Msg. Request (or Msg. Free) is displayed.
Protected	The number of protected Msg. Request (or Msg. Free) is displayed.

- Unread, as well as protected messages are counted in both Unread and Protected.

<Example: Checking the number of saved Msg. Request>

1 Select "No. of messages" from the function menu on the Msg. Request list screen.

To check the number of saved Msg. Free, select "No. of messages" from the function menu on the Msg. Free list screen.  
When there are no messages, "No messages" will appear.

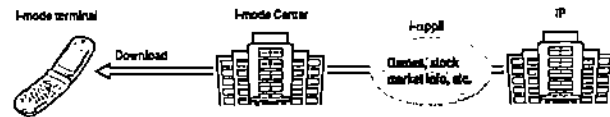
## ● i-appli

---

About i-appli .....	XXX
Downloading i-appli .....	XXX
Executing i-appli .....	XXX
Executing i-appli Automatically .....	XXX
Executing i-appli from a Site or Mail .....	XXX
Setting the i-appli Standby Screen .....	XXX
Managing i-appli .....	XXX
Using the i-appli Functions .....	XXX

## About i-cppli

By downloading an i-cppli from a site, you can make your i-mode compliant FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) more useful and easier to use. For instance, you can download and play a variety of games on your i-mode terminal. You can download an i-cppli share price information that will automatically check your shares at regular intervals. Smooth scrolling is possible with a map-based i-cppli, because it enables you to download only the information that is needed. There are also i-cppli that let you store information directly from the application into your Phonebook or schedule, and i-cppli that can link up with the Multimedia or tasks such as saving and downloading images.



- Downloading an i-cppli → p.69
- Running an i-cppli → p.73
- Launching an i-cppli automatically → p.79

- Some software applications use information on mobile phones of the i-mode terminal (manufacturer's number of FOMA terminal, identification information of FOMA card, etc.).
- Some software applications dial up the network when they run. You can disable this feature so that they do not transmit.

### Using registration data

Some i-cppli software programs allow you to refer, store and operate registration data on your i-mode terminal (Phonebook, Bookmark, Schedule, images, movies and icon info). By using these registration data, you can perform the following:

- Phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Storing Bookmarks
- Storing schedules
- Retrieving images from multimedia
- Saving images in multimedia

### About i-cppli DX

i-cppli DX links up with the information on an i-mode terminal (such as mail and incoming/outgoing call records and Phonebook data) to make i-cppli even more enjoyable and easier to use. This includes composing mail in your favorite cartoon character screen, having a cartoon character tell you who an incoming call or message is from, and linking with mail functions to provide real-time updates on the progress of games or essential information such as share prices. → p.75

### Using registration data

Some i-cppli DXs allow you to refer, store and operate registration data including mail, redial, received call and ring tone, along with the registration data that can be used on normal i-cppli (Phonebook, Bookmark, Schedule, images, movies and icon info). By using these data, you can perform the following:

- Phonebook entries
- Browsing Phonebook entries
- Using icon information
- Storing Bookmarks
- Storing schedules
- Using the Mail menu
- Using the Compose message screen
- Browsing the latest redial records
- Browsing the latest received call records
- Browsing the latest unread mail
- Saving melodies
- Changing ring tones (phone, mail and messages)
- Retrieving images from multimedia
- Saving images to multimedia
- Changing screen settings (Standby screen, dialing and answering calls, sending and receiving mail, receiving Msg. Request/Free)

### NOTE

- Regardless of the software communication settings, i-cppli DX may automatically establish a connection to check the validity of the software. The frequency and timing of the connections differs depending on the software.
- To use i-cppli DX, the date and time must be set. → p.65

### About mail-connected i-cppli

Mail-connected i-cppli is a type of i-cppli DX that uses i-mode mail to exchange information and provide essential information such as share prices and real-time updates on the progress of games, etc. making software even more useful and enjoyable.

- There are cases that the i-cppli mail used in the mail-connected i-cppli will not be displayed correctly.

### Other features

#### i-cppli standby display

In the i-cppli standby display, you can use an i-cppli as the standby display and still receive mail or make calls. This expands the range of uses for your standby display to include showing the news or weather information or having your favorite cartoon characters let you know when you receive mail or when there is an alarm. → p.86, and p.177  
This function can be used by software that supports i-cppli standby displays.

#### i-cppli auto start

This feature allows you to specify a time, date or day of the week when a software application is started up automatically. There are also software applications that can be launched automatically at set intervals specified in the software beforehand. → p.79

#### Taking pictures

Some applications can take pictures using the FOMA built-in camera. → p.246  
This function can be used by software that supports the camera photography function of the FOMA.

#### Infrared exchange

This feature allows a software application running on the FOMA to communicate with other devices equipped with an infrared exchange function. This further expands the uses of the FOMA by allowing link-ups with other devices that feature an Infrared exchange function. → p.340

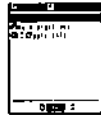
- This function can be used by software that supports the infrared exchange function.
- Depending on the remote device, it may not be possible to exchange some types of data even where the device has an infrared exchange function.

### ■ Infrared remote control

This allows software applications to control devices such as household appliances that are compatible with an infrared remote control. → p.349  
This function can be used by software that supports the infrared remote control function. Software that is compatible with the controlled device is also required.

### Displaying the i-AppII menu

1 Press **[Menu]** while the stand-by screen is displayed.



Menu item	Description	See page
1) Software list	Displays the software list.	p.300K
2) Auto start set	Sets whether to automatically start an i-AppII on the specified date and time.	p.300K
3) i-AppII info	Checks the i-AppII information such as the time when the latest termination of the standby display or automatic start is performed.	p.300K

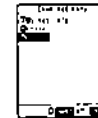
### Downloading i-AppII

You can run a downloaded software program on the display of your FOMA terminal.

- You can save up to 200 downloaded software programs (up to 5 programs for mail-connected i-AppII). The number of software that can be saved varies within the range of 10 to 200, depending on the amount of data.
- When you download the mail-connected i-AppII, an i-AppII mail folder will be created automatically in the sent/received mail folder list. The folder name will be the same as the mail-connected i-AppII name that you downloaded. No name change can be made.
- When there are 5 folders dedicated to the mail-connected i-AppII or your FOMA already stores the mail-connected i-AppII which uses same received/sent folders, you cannot download the mail-connected i-AppII.
- Mail-connected i-AppII cannot be downloaded when mail security is set.
- You can automatically sort i-AppII mails that you have sent or received using a mail-connected i-AppII to the folder created when you downloaded a mail-connected i-AppII. You can also sort received i-AppII mails manually.
- When you delete a mail-connected i-AppII but not delete its folder, and download the same mail-connected i-AppII again, you can use the same folder. You can also delete the folder you kept and then create a new folder. You cannot download mail-connected i-AppII if you neither use the folder you kept nor create a new folder.

### ■ When there is space in stored number and memory

#### 1 Select and download software from a site screen.



Once the software is completely downloaded, a message "Completed" appears. However, in case of the software which can be started immediately from a site, the message does not appear.  
To cancel during downloading  
Press **[Select]**.

#### 2 Select "YES" to start up the software.



When the software is activated, "OK" is displayed on the lower screen.  
When you do not want to start up software  
Select "NO".  
To cancel the startup of software  
Press **[Select]** while software is starting up.

- If you fail downloading a software program due to poor radio wave and other conditions, the software can not be stored.
- You cannot switch tasks during downloading.
- When you download i-AppII DX or i-AppII that uses registration data or mobile phone information, a message appears notifying you of such use.
- When you download software information or software from a SSL-compliant site, "SSL" is displayed on the screen. → p.48
- When you download software that requires communication or that can be set for the standby display, software setting screen is displayed. Complete the setting according to the downloaded software, and press **[Select]**.
- A message may appear asking whether or not communication is permitted while a software program is running.
- Mail-connected i-AppII names may differ from folder names for the i-AppII mails.

### ■ When stored software is full

When your FOMA terminal already stores 200 software programs or does not have enough memory, a message appears notifying you that the memory is full. Delete some stored software and secure memory to download new software.

#### 1 Select "YES".

When you do not want to delete software  
Select "NO".

#### 2 Select software you want to delete.



Every time you select software, the value of "Shortage" memory (bytes) and memory bar are reduced. Continue to select software you delete until the value reaches 0.

In case of memory shortage

#### 3 Press **[Finish]** and select "YES".

The downloading is restarted.

- When you download a software program, if you delete saved software programs and you fail downloading due to poor radio wave and other conditions, you can neither store the software program nor delete the software programs which you tried to delete.
- When you try to delete a software program that is set to an i-cuppli standby display (software with "S" mark) or that is set to start up automatically, a message appears asking whether you want to delete the set software program and save new software.
- Once the software program set to the i-cuppli standby display is deleted, the standby display is replaced by that set in "Stand-by display" of "Display setting" (p.177 in [Basic]).
- If you delete a mail-connected i-cuppli, a message appears asking whether you want to delete the folders dedicated to the mail-connected i-cuppli. If you want to delete only the mail-connected i-cuppli, select "NO". Meanwhile, when you want to delete the mail-connected i-cuppli along with all the sent/received folders exclusively for that mail-connected i-cuppli as well as all the mail in those folders, select "YES". However, you cannot delete mail-connected i-cuppli dedicated sent/received folders while the folders are used, the security settings are made to the folders or protected messages are included in the folders.
- When you delete a mail-connected i-cuppli but not delete its folder, you can check the mail body text in the folder from the function menu.
- If you delete mail-connected i-cuppli, newly received mails may be deleted while you select the software program you want to delete.

#### About software that starts up directly from a site

Unlike normal i-cuppli software programs, once downloading is successful, some i-cuppli software programs are immediately started up from sites. When you have downloaded these programs from the sites, they are immediately started up without the message "Completed" displayed.

- A message may appear asking whether you want to communicate while the program is running.
- Some software programs cannot be saved on FOMA terminal. The software programs that are immediately started up from the sites cannot be saved on FOMA terminal when downloaded and then started up.

#### The software programs that can be saved on FOMA terminal

When you end the software program, a message appears asking whether you want to save it. To save the software program on FOMA terminal, select "YES". Not to save it, select "NO".

#### The software programs that cannot be saved on FOMA terminal

When you end the software program, the site do not receive it. If you want to start up the software program again, download it again.

- Once you have saved the software program, it can be run in the same way as the normal i-cuppli software program.

### Viewing i-cuppli Information during download

<Display software info>

Default setting OFF

When you download software, you can make settings to check software information. This useful setting enables you to check software information and then select if you want to continue the download or not.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "i-cuppli settings" ► "Display software info".

To display software information  
Select "Display".

A software information screen is displayed during download operation. Check the software information and press (Set) to select if you want to continue the download operation or not.

Display no software information  
Select "Not display".

### Checking software information

<Software Information>

You can view software information saved in the FOMA terminal.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Software list".
- 2 Highlight the software that provides information you want to check, and then select "Software info" from the function menu.
- 3 Check software information.



Press or to turn the page.  
After you check the information, press to return to the list screen.

- When the software is downloaded from an SSL-compatible page, the "SSL" field displays "OFF".
- You cannot change the name of the software displayed in this function.

#### Icon display of software

Software list screen shows type and setting of the programs by the following icons.

- Indicates an i-cuppli DX → p.28 and p.68
- Indicates a mail-connected i-cuppli
- Indicates that the program allows you to specify "i-cuppli To setting" (p.77), "i-cuppli Stand-by set" (p.68 and p.179) and "Auto scan time" (p.60). However, is not displayed if "Auto scan set" (p.76) is set to OFF, even if the program allows "Auto scan time" to be set.
- Indicates that "Auto start time" is specified → p.60
- Indicates that the software is set for i-cuppli standby display
- Indicates that "Auto scan time" is specified and the software program is set on i-cuppli Stand by set
- Indicates that the software was downloaded from an SSL-compatible Web page

### Executing i-cuppli

You can select software from the software list screen to start up the software.

- The functions assigned to the FOMA's keys differ depending on the program.
- The melody played while the software program is running is set to the same volume as that set for "Phone/Video-phone" in "Ring volume". → p.79
- Changes to the color scheme set by the "Color pattern" setting do not affect program displays. → p.182
- When the camera is started from i-cuppli, images are not saved in "Image" (p.294) but are saved on i-cuppli.
- If you run the Bar code reader from the i-cuppli, read data may be used for software. It is not saved in the "Bar code reader" (p.281).
- When the camera function is started from i-cuppli, the image size cannot be changed. If the image size is 240×240, is displayed.

1 Select **[Menu]** **[F2]** ▶ "Software list".

2 Select software you want to start.

The software starts up, and "OK" is displayed on the lower screen. When i-pppli DX starts up, "i-pppli" is displayed.

To cancel the startup of software  
Press **[Select]** while the software is starting up.

#### ■ Exiting from software

1 Hold down **[Exit]** for 1 second or more and select "YES".

You can also end the program by pressing **[Exit]** and then selecting "YES".  
When you do not want to exit from software  
Select "NO".

**How to use the software key**  
Some software may display guidance on the lowermost line of the screen, which are related to the settings or operations such as [EXIT], [BACK]. They are called software key. To execute the software key, press the appropriate function key.



- You can start up software program automatically by setting "Auto start setting" to "ON" and then specifying "Auto start time". --p.79
- Some types of software automatically continue communicating after download. To use this service, you need to set up in the FOMA terminal in advance.
- When an i-mode mail is received when a software program is being executed, "i-pppli" will appear. To display the mail received, end the software or use the multi task function.
- A message may appear asking whether communication is permitted while the software program is running. --p.82
- To connect the network automatically while a software program is running (including during auto start), you need to set "Network setting" (p.82) to "ON" in advance. To perform the communication from software program set on i-pppli standby display, you must set "i-pppli Stand-by network" (p.87) to "ON" in advance.
- i-motion (video and sound data) may be played while the software is running. --p.96
- The FOMA is equipped with a 3D Polygon™ engine to allow you to experience first-hand i-pppli 3D images. All Three-dimensional images with depth can be created by combining polygons (triangles, squares, etc.).
- Do not remove battery pack when the program is running, otherwise the data and information used at that time are not be saved.
- Images to be used on i-pppli and data that you have input may be automatically sent to the server via the Internet.  
All images used in i-pppli are those images shot when the camera function is started from i-pppli interlocked with the camera, images downloaded by using the infrared exchange function of i-pppli, images downloaded by connecting from i-pppli to Web or site and images downloaded from multi media by i-pppli.

368

#### Making connection setting

<Network setting>

You can make network settings while the software is running.

● You cannot make the setting for the software that does not require network connection.

1 Select **[Menu]** **[F2]** ▶ "Software list".

2 Highlight the software you want to set, and then select "Software setting" - "Network set" from the function menu.

3 Select the item you want to set.

To make network setting every time the software starts up.  
Select "Check every start".

To make the software automatically connect network while the software is running.  
Select "ON".

Not to make the software automatically connect network while the software is running.  
Select "OFF".

When the software starts up, a message appears notifying you that the software is not connecting to the network.

- Note that you may not be able to receive information in a timely manner when the network setting is "OFF".
- While "Self mode" (p.207) is set or mode is activated for "Dual network service", software which carry out communication may not be startup in some cases.

#### Making settings to permit the notification of Icon Information

<Icon info>

Setting i-pppli to use Icon Info on unread mails, manner mode, etc.

● You cannot make the setting for the software that does not utilize icon info.

1 Select **[Menu]** **[F2]** ▶ "Software list".

2 Highlight the software you want to set, and then select "Software setting" - "Icon info" from the function menu.

3 Select the item you want to set.

To use icon information  
Select "ON".

Not using icon information  
Select "OFF".

- When this function is set to "ON" in the software set on i-pppli standby display, presence or absence of unread mails/messages, battery level, manner mode and in-area/out-of-area icons may be sent to IP (Information service provider) via Web in the same way as your mobile phone information (such as FOMA terminal production number and FOMA card identification number), and therefore may be obtained by a third party.

369

**Making settings to permit the reference of Phonebook or history** <See P.book/hist.>

You can make settings to refer to the Phonebook, the redial, received call records and/or the latest unread mail when the I-cppli DX is run.

- You cannot browse secret data in the Phonebook without first selecting Secret or Secret-only mode.
- You cannot see the history when you set "OFF" for "Record display set" (p.206), "Received calls" or "Redial/Dialed calls".
- You cannot make the setting for the software that does not allow you to see the Phonebook or history.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Software list".
- 2 Highlight the software you want to set, and then select "Software setting". See P.book/hist." from the function menu.
- 3 Select the item you want to set.

To permit the reference  
Select "ON".  
Not to permit the reference  
Select "OFF".

**Making settings to permit the changes of ring tone and image** <Change mid/img.>

You can make settings to automatically change ring tones of phones or mails as well as the standby display or images during mail sending/receiving operation when I-cppli DX is run.

- You cannot make the setting for the software that does not allow you to change ring tones or images.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Software list".
- 2 Highlight the software you want to set, and then select "Software setting". "Change mid/img." from the function menu.
- 3 Select the item you want to set.

To confirm whether you make the change every time the auto change function works or not.  
Select "Check every change".  
To permit auto change  
Select "ON".  
Not to permit auto change  
Select "OFF".

**Setting display light or vibrator** <<Display light/<Vibrator/<Image window>

Default setting | All depend on system

Set whether to follow the settings in the FOMA terminal (depend on system) or to follow the software settings (depend on software) for display light, vibrator and image window.

Operating part	I-cppli setting	Operating context	
		Depend on System	Depend on Software
Backlight	α Display light	"Display light" (p.163)	Depends on I-cppli settings
Vibrator	α Vibrator	"Not available"	
Image window	α Image window	"Image window" (p.38)	

\* When "αVibrator" is set to "Depend on system", it is not available regardless of "Vibrator" (p.167) setting.

<Example: Setting backlight operation>

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "I-cppli settings" ► "αDisplay light".

When following the display light settings in the FOMA terminal  
Select "Depend on system".

When following the display light settings in the software  
Select "Depend on software".

**Starting up another software from the running software**

You can start up another software from the running software. Downloading the software for starting the specified software enables it to start without having to return to the software list screen.

- Downloading beforehand the software that can start up other software is required.
- Specify the software to start up in advance.

**Starting up the software**

- 1 Perform the operation for starting another software while the software is running.

The way in which another software is started depends on the running software.  
A message asking whether to start up another software appears.

- 2 Select "YES".

The software that is currently running ends and the other software starts up.  
To cancel software startup  
Select "No".

**Registering the software to start**

You need to register the software to start beforehand depending on the running software.

- 1 Register the other software while the software is running.

The way in which another software is started depends on the running software.

- 2 Select "YES".


The software list screen appears.





- 3 Select the software you want to register.

The software is registered and the screen returns to the running software.





## Using pre-installed software in the FOMA terminal

You can use the following software already installed in the FOMA terminal: "Dimo  絵文字メール (Dimo i-pictograph mail)", "ドラゴンクエスト1 (DRAGON QUEST 1)", "ミニゲームアイランド (Mini game island)" and "TVリモコン (TV remote control)".

- Be careful that looking at the display for too long may be harmful to your eyesight.
- "Dimo  絵文字メール (Dimo i-pictograph mail)" and "ミニゲームアイランド (Mini game island)" can be started up from either the i-cppd standby display or the ordinary i-cppd. The menu or contents which can be used may vary partly depending on the starting method.
- As for "TVリモコン (TV remote control)", see "Using infrared remote control function" (p.349).
- If you want to reinstall some pre-installed i-cppd software which you have deleted, download from "みんなNらんど" in the "ケータイ電話メーカー" site.  
To connect to "みんなNらんど", select as follows:  
While the standby display is displayed, select  (i-cppd) ·  (Menu) ·  (メニューリスト) · (ケータイ電話メーカー) · "みんなNらんど".

### Enjoying Dimo 絵文字メール

This software makes mail exchange more enjoyable by having cartoon characters move lively and cheerfully in response to pictographs shown in mail. If the other party uses a Dimo-compatible terminal, cartoon characters will let you know the reception of a call or mail, or give you information about unread mail in your FOMA terminal.

- 1 Start up "Dimo  絵文字メール", and then press  to set your data.



Starting up Software → p.73



08V10

- 2 Select an item from the menu.





メール	: Use mail.
グループチャット	: Use group chat.
ペアチャット	: Use pair chat.
メンバー登録	: Set your data or members of the other party.
背景の設定	: Set the background of the screen.
Dimoとお話	: Displays the rooms of cartoon characters.

To display details on usage and up-to-date information:

After pressing  (HELP) and pointing the cursor to the menu you want to see, press .


Press  (HELP) and  (RETURN) to connect to the site and see the up-to-date information.



-  絵文字メール is a mail-connected i-cppd (p.67), and a variation of i-cppd DX (p.66).
- With this software, i-cppd mail used in another type of mail-connected i-cppd may not be displayed properly.
- To enjoy  絵文字メール, set the date and time in "Set local time" in advance (p.65).
- Refer to the "FOMA i-mode User's Manual" for details.

### Enjoying ドラゴンクエスト1

ドラゴンクエスト1 (DRAGON QUEST 1) is the first of the highly popular series of role-playing games. With this software, you can become a brave warrior and explore the world of swordsmanship and sorcery.

- 1 Start up "ドラゴンクエスト1", and then press .




Starting up Software → p.73

- 2 Select "ぼうけんのしょをつくる".

- 3 Select "ぼうけんのしょ" to use, and then set "なまえ", "ひょうじそく" and "おとのおおきさ".


The game will begin.

To display details on usage:

At the game screen, press  (オプション) to select "たびのこころえ".

### Enjoying ミニゲームアイランド

With this software, you can catch animated images moving over a map to enjoy various mini games.


- 1 Start up "ミニゲームアイランド", and then press .



Starting up Software → p.73

The game will begin.

To display details on usage:

At each game screen, press  (メニュー) to select "ヘルプ表示".

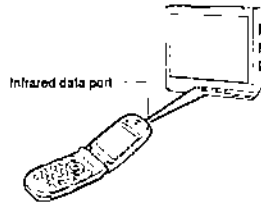
### Using Infrared remote control function <ir remote control function>

You can download i-cppd software for remote control and use your FOMA terminal as a remote controller for TV or VCR system.

- You need to download the program for the product you want to control. Note that there may be no program available for your product and that remote control operation may not be possible even with the correct program if your product is not compatible.
- You can download remote control software for FOMA terminal from the sites listed on the iMenu.
- If you are selecting "Self mode" (p.207), you can not use the remote control function.

### ■ Remote control operation

- Hold your FOMA terminal with the infrared port facing towards the infrared receiver of the target device. Operable range is approximately 4 meters. This range may vary depending on the ambient light.
- "IR" will appear during remote control operation.

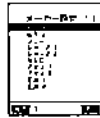


### ■ To use as TV remote control

FOMA terminal has i-appli TV remote control software programs.

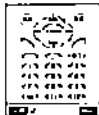
- "TVリモコン (TV remote control)" contains 20 types of remote control programs. Select a program for your television set. Programs for some television sets may not be available.
- Even if there is a program for the make of your TV, it may not apply to certain models or certain functions.
- The following remote control programs are contained in "TVリモコン (TV remote control)":
 

• Panasonic 1/2	• Sony	• Sharp 1/2	• NEC
• Alwa 1/2	• Sanyo 1/2	• Pioneer	• JVC 1/2
• Funai 1/2/3	• Mitsubishi	• Toshiba	• Hitachi
• Fujitsu General			



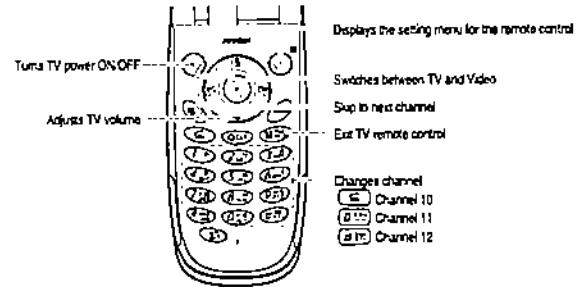
1 Select **[Menu]** ► **[Software list]**.

2 Select "TVリモコン (TV remote control)" and press **[Select]**.



When you install the remote control for the first time or you change your TV set, select the TV manufacturer (remote control data).

### 3 Use as a TV remote control.



### To select TV manufacturer and change remote control [design]

You can select remote control data for your TV or change the TV remote control to your favorite design.

1 Startup "TVリモコン (TV remote control)" and press **[設定 (Setting)]**.

To select remote control data

Select "メーカー設定 (TV manufacturer)" and press **[Select]**. Then, select remote control data and press **[Select]**.

To change the TV remote control design

Select "デザイン設定 (Change design)" and press **[Select]**. Then, select design and press **[Select]**.

To return to the remote control screen

Press **[Return]**.

### Executing i-appli Automatically

Default setting OFF

You can make setting to startup the software automatically.

- When you turn the auto start feature to ON, set the start-up date for the software you want to start up automatically. — p.80
- You cannot set Auto start setting if the date and time is not set in "Set local time" — p.65
- Some types of software starts up automatically even if you do not make Auto start setting.

### ● Making the setting to start i-appli automatically <Auto start setting>

1 Select **[Menu]** ► **[Auto start set]**.

To start up the software automatically

Select "ON".

Not starting up the software automatically

Select "OFF".

## Setting the auto start time <Auto start time>

Default setting All OFF

You can set the time when the software starts up automatically. On the software that the time interval is already set for auto start, you can select whether you set the auto start to valid or not.

- You can make auto start setting for up to 3 software programs.
- You cannot set Auto start time if "Auto start setting" is not set to "ON".
- The software does not start up automatically unless "Auto start setting" is set to "ON".
- The software does not start up automatically in the following conditions:
  - When the power is OFF
  - During a call
  - When the set time of Alarm clock, schedule, or ToDo is the same as that of auto start
  - When other functions are activating
  - When the i-cuppli menu is activating
  - The Lmg preset for the software updating coincides with the time in which the software is automatically started.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Software list".

2 Highlight the software you want to set, and then select "Auto start time" from the function menu.

3 Select the item you want to set.



To set the time interval set in the software to be valid  
Select "Time interval set".  
To set the start-up time  
Select "Start time set".  
To return to the Software list screen, press (Finish) without selecting "Start time set".

4 Press (Finish) to set the starting time.

To set the starting time  
Select the displayed date and time to set the setting date and time.  
About date setting → p.218  
To set the repeating auto start  
Select the displayed repeat setting "Daily" or "Weekly".  
About repeat setting → p.218

5 Press (Finish).

is displayed for the software that auto start is set to.  
If you set "Auto start" for the software program that is already set on standby display, appears.



- When "Auto start" is already set to 3 software programs, a message appears notifying you of such condition.
- If another software is already set to start up automatically at same time, a message appears notifying you that it is already set at same time. Specify a different time.
- "Time interval set" is not available for the software that the interval time of auto start is not set.

## Checking whether software has started up automatically <Auto start info>

You can check whether the software program has started up automatically at the specified time.

- You cannot use "Auto start info" when there is no software program with "Auto start setting" set.

1 Select (Menu) ► ► "i-cuppli Info" ► "Auto start info".



Software name, auto start time and start-up information are displayed.  
When the software has started up automatically, "Start" is displayed, when the software did not start up automatically, "Start >" is displayed.  
Check the procedure and then press to go back to the i-cuppli action info screen.

- If the software program cannot start up automatically, (Unbooted icon) desktop icon appears on standby display. To display Auto start info screen, select the icon. For information on desktop icons, refer to p.170.
- To erase Auto start info, cancel "Auto start time".

## Executing i-cuppli from a Site or Mail

You can start up i-cuppli from the non-i-cuppli functions such as sites or mails. The following functions allow you to start up i-cuppli.

Function	Contents
While a Web site is displayed	i-cuppli starts up when an selected item sets the start-up of i-cuppli.
While an i-cuppli mail is displayed	i-cuppli starts up when you select an item that sets the start-up of i-cuppli from the i-cuppli mail text.
Infrared exchange function	i-cuppli starts up when your FOMA terminal receives the start-up signals of i-cuppli while infrared exchange is processed.
Bar code reader function	i-cuppli starts up when recognized bar code sets the start-up of i-cuppli.

- You can make settings in "i-cuppli To" whether i-cuppli can start up from the related functions → p.78

### Starting i-cuppli from sites or mails

<Example: Starting up i-cuppli from sites>

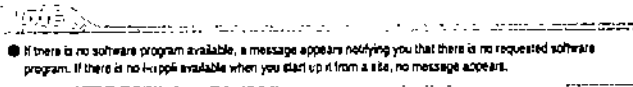
1 Select the item that links to the software.



A message asking whether to start the i-cuppli is displayed.

2 Select "YES".

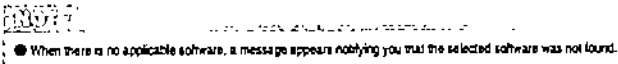
i-cuppli starts up.  
When you do not want to start up the software  
Select "NO".



### Starting up i-cppll from Infrared exchange function

**1** Select (Menu) ► ► "Ir exchange".  
Using Infrared Exchange Function → p.340

**2** Select "Receive" and receive the start-up signal of i-cppll.  
After a message appears notifying you that the communication has been terminated, i-cppll starts up.



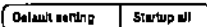
### Starting up i-cppll by bar code reader function

**1** Scan bar code that contains information for starting i-cppll.  
For information on bar code scanning → p.281

**2** Select "Activate i-cppll" and then select "YES" on details screen for the bar code reader.  
i-cppll starts up.  
If you do not want the software to start up, select "NO".



### Making the setting to start up the software using i-cppll To <i-cppll To>



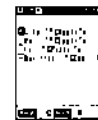
You can make settings to startup the software from sites, malls, infrared exchange or bar code.

- You can modify the settings for each software program.
- You cannot select an item that cannot be set.

**1** Select (Menu) ► ► "Software list".

**2** Highlight the software you want to set, and then select "Set i-cppll To" from the function menu.

### 3 Select the Item you want to set.



Each time you select the icon, (Startup) and (Do not startup) switch by turns.

**4** Press (Finish).

### Setting the i-cppll Standby Screen

You can set the i-cppll software to a standby display. This useful feature enables you to start up the software directly from the standby display once you set a software program you often use to a standby display.

- You can set the i-cppll software you selected on a standby display. is displayed on the lower screen while the i-cppll standby display is ON.
- Only 1 i-cppll can be set as an i-cppll standby display.
- Not available to use Web To function (p.114) from i-cppll standby display.
- When the FOMA card is replaced with another one or the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on with the FOMA card removed, the display set up in "Stand-by display" in "Display setting" will be displayed even if the i-cppll standby display has been set. The i-cppll standby display that you set will be displayed when the original FOMA card is inserted.
- Some types of software cannot be set as the i-cppll standby display.

**1** Select (Menu) ► ► "Software list".

**2** Highlight the software you want to set, and then select "Software setting"-"Stand-by set" from the function menu.

**3** Select the item you want to set.

To set the software on the standby display

Select "ON".

is displayed for the software that is set on the standby display.

To set no software on the standby display

Select "OFF".

## When you set the network-based software to the i-cppii standby display, it may not operate properly due to the condition of radio wave.

- When you set the network-based software to the i-cppii standby display, it may not operate properly due to the condition of radio wave.
- When the i-cppii standby display is set, your FOMA does not display an image that is set in "Stand-by display" of "Display setting" (p.177) on the standby display. However, when the standby display is shown in the multi-task conditions, such image can be displayed even the i-cppii standby display is already set. Secondly, even if the software features to start up as i-cppii and then the standby display is shown as original, it does not work while other task (function) is operating after starting up the software from the standby display. When the screen returns to the standby display, some software may send a message notifying you that the operation won't be able to continue and terminate the software. At the same time, the standby display setting may also be canceled.
- The i-cppii standby display ends in the cases such as the followings:
  - When the camera function starts up in "Mega pixel mode"
  - When you upgrade a software program
  - When the i-cppii standby display is a mail-connected i-cppii, and you are viewing the mail-connected i-cppii folder from the mail function
- If you have set to the i-cppii standby display and you turn your FOMA on, a message appears asking if it's OK to start up the i-cppii standby display.
- If you set "All lock" (p.200) or "PIM lock" (p.204) while i-cppii standby display is displayed, i-cppii standby display ends, and then a image set on "Stand-by display" in "Display setting" appears. When you cancel "All lock" or "PIM lock", the i-cppii standby display is displayed.
- When both the i-cppii standby display and the normal standby display are set, the i-cppii standby display will be displayed with higher priority.

## ● Making settings to permit the connection from the i-cppii stand-by display <Stand-by network>

You can make network settings when the software that is set on the standby display can be connected with the network.

- You cannot make the setting for the software that does not work on the network.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "Software list".
- 2 Highlight the software you want to set, and then select "Software setting"-"Stand-by net" from the function menu.
- 3 Select the item you want to set.
  - To connect to the network while the software is running  
Select "On".
  - Not connecting to the network while the software is running  
Select "Off".

## When you set the network-based software to the i-cppii standby display, it may not operate properly due to the condition of radio wave.

- Note that you may not be able to receive information in a timely manner when the network setting is "OFF".

## ● Starting up the i-cppii standby display

You can start up the software that is set on the i-cppii standby display and maintain the same condition as when the software is started up from the software list.

- 1 Press while the i-cppii standby display is shown.



i-cppii starts up and changes to flashing on the lower screen.

## ● Cancelling the i-cppii standby display

You can cancel the set-up of i-cppii standby display and an image set on "Stand-by display" of "Display setting" will be replaced.

- Cancelling the i-cppii standby display during startup

- 1 Hold down for 1 second or more while the i-cppii standby display is running.
- 2 Select "Terminated".
  - A message appears notifying you that the i-cppii standby display is canceled.
  - To cancel the termination of the i-cppii standby display  
Select "Cancel".
  - To terminate the i-cppii to show the i-cppii standby display again.  
Select "End".
  - A message appears notifying you of the termination and the i-cppii standby display is shown.

- Cancelling while the i-cppii standby display is displayed

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "i-cppii settings" ► "End stand-by display".
- 2 Select "Terminate".
  - A message notifying that i-cppii standby display was terminated appears.
  - To return i-cppii standby display  
Select "End".

## ● Checking the termination information of i-cppii standby display <End stand-by info>

When an i-cppii standby display is terminated due to an error, the FOMA terminal stores the name of failed software, error occurrence time and reason so that you can check the information.

- When no error occur upon termination, no information is stored.

- 1 Select (Menu) ► ► "i-cppii info" ► "End stand-by info".



The name of failed software, error occurrence time and reason are displayed. When "FUNC" is displayed on the lower right screen, you can call up the function menu.

- To copy the end stand-by information  
Select "Copy info" from the function menu.
- To delete the end stand-by information  
Select "Delete info" from the function menu.

## Managing i-ccppi

You can upgrade the i-ccppi and/or delete unnecessary i-ccppi programs.

### Upgrading i-ccppi

When the downloaded software has been updated to newer version on the site, the software can be upgraded.

● Mail-connected i-ccppi that changes the mail folder name cannot be changed in the following situation:

- While mail security is set.
- While folder security is set.
- While sent/received mail folders only for mail-connected i-ccppi to be upgraded are used.

1 Select **[Menu]** ▶ **[?]** ▶ "Software list".

2 Highlight the software you want to upgrade, and then select "Upgrade".

A message asking whether to upgrade the software is displayed.

3 Select "YES".

The software will be upgraded.  
Not to upgrade the software  
Select "NO".

#### Note

- If the software program has not been updated, a message appears notifying you that the existing software program is the latest version after the software information is obtained.
- If pages are compatible with SSL, a message appears notifying you that SSL communication has started.
- When "Display software info." is set to "Display", you can check information on the software program before upgrading it. → p.71
- Before the software program is upgraded, a message may appear notifying you that production number of your mobile phone and identification number of FOMA card will be used.
- If it is detected that a software program has been updated to a newer version when you are re-downloading the program, a message appears asking whether or not you wish to upgrade it.
- Some software programs may be automatically upgraded. In this case, a message appears asking whether or not you wish to upgrade the program.

### Deleting i-ccppi

You can delete stored software one by one or delete all the software.

1 Select **[Menu]** ▶ **[?]** ▶ "Software list".

2 Highlight the software you want to delete, and then select "Delete this" from the function menu.

To delete more than 1 software program  
Select "Delete selected" and select the programs you want to delete.

To delete all the software programs  
Select "Delete all", and then enter your security code.

About security codes → p.21

A message asking whether to delete the software is displayed.

3 Select "YES".

Software program(s) will be deleted.  
Not to delete the software programs  
Select "NO".

- If the software program that you want to delete is set as the i-ccppi standby display (software with "W" mark) or is set to Auto start, the software setting status is displayed and a message appears asking whether or not you want to delete it.
- If you delete the software set on i-ccppi standby display, the standby screen set on "Stand-by display" for "Display setting" (p.177) will appear.
- When you select "Delete all", pre-installed software (p.73) is also deleted.
- If you delete a mail-connected i-ccppi, a message appears asking whether you want to delete the folders dedicated to the mail-connected i-ccppi. If you want to delete only the mail-connected i-ccppi, select "NO". Meanwhile, when you want to delete the mail-connected i-ccppi along with all the sent/received folders exclusively for that mail-connected i-ccppi as well as all the mail in those folders, select "YES". However, you cannot delete the folders while the sent/received folders dedicated to the mail-connected i-ccppi are used, security settings are made for those folders, or pre-cached messages are included.
- If you delete mail-connected i-ccppi, newly received mails compliant i-ccppi may be deleted while you select the software program you want to delete.
- If you receive mail for i-ccppi after you delete mail-connected i-ccppi, the mail will be saved to the Inbox.

### Displaying security error history

<Security error history>

When you try to select some operations that are not permitted in i-ccppi or i-ccppi DX, a security error occurs, forcing to terminate the software while the information is stored in the security error history. When such error occurs on the i-ccppi stand-by display, the i-ccppi stand-by display is forcibly terminated.

- Security error history can be stored up to 10 errors.
- When security error data is not saved in the FOMA terminal, you cannot display the history.

1 Select **[Menu]** ▶ **[?]** ▶ "i-ccppi info" ▶ "Security error history".



The name of software and the occurrence time and reason of the security error are displayed.

To copy the security error history  
Select "Copy info" from the function menu.  
To delete the security error history  
Select "Delete info" from the function menu.

- When a security error has occurred while the i-ccppi standby display is not running, the "Security error" desktop icon will appear on the standby display. When you select this icon, the Security error history screen will appear. For information on desktop icons, refer to p.170.
- When a security error occurs on the i-ccppi standby display, the information is secured in "End stand-by info" (p.89) as well as the security error history.

### ■ When creating a software program

When the created software does not operate properly, the trace information may be useful.

- When there is no memory of trace information, new record is written over the oldest one.
- When no trace information is stored in the FOMA terminal, such information cannot be displayed.

#### 1 Select [Menu] ► [I-αppli Info] ► "Trace Info".

Trace information of software is displayed ordered by occurrence.

To copy the trace information

Select "Copy info" from the function menu.

To delete the trace information

Select "Delete info" from the function menu.

## Using the Functions from the i-αppli

### Using the camera function from i-αppli

Follow the procedure below to use the camera function from a program that you are running.

- You cannot shot a movie.
- You cannot use the camera functions from the i-αppli stand-by screen.

#### 1 Perform the operation for starting camera while the program is running.

The camera function is activated, and then the terminal is set to the camera mode.

The items that can be set, the specification method and the procedure for activating the camera all vary depending on the program used.

#### 2 Shoot an image.

—p.XXX

- Images used in the program and data entered by users is sent via the Internet regardless of user's intention.
- Images used in the program are those images shot when the Camera function is launched from an active program, images downloaded from an active program using the infrared communication function, images downloaded by connecting from an active program to the site, images an active program retrieved from "image" and images stored in the program.
- A program that retrieves images from "image" cannot retrieve images at sizes larger than 352 dots x 288 dots.

### Using the infrared communication function from an i-αppli

You can use the infrared communication function (p.XXX) from a program that you are running.

- You must download a program that allows you to use the infrared communication function.
- You cannot use the infrared communication function from the i-αppli stand-by screen.
- You cannot use the infrared communication function when the terminal is set to Self mode (p.XXX).

#### 1 Perform the operation for starting the Infrared communication while the program is running.

The procedure for starting the infrared communication function varies depending on the program.

#### 2 Select "YES".

"NO": Cancels the operation.

To interrupt the infrared communication function

Press [Set] while the "Exchanging..." message is displayed.

### Using an i-αppli from the bar code reader

This procedure allows you to use the bar code reader from an active program.

- You must first download software that supports the use of bar code readers.
- The bar code reader cannot be used from the i-αppli Stand-by screen.
- The scanned information is used in the software program and is not stored in "Bar code reader" (p.XXX).

#### 1 Perform the operation for starting the bar code reader while the program is running.

The procedure for starting the bar code reader varies depending on the program.

#### 2 Scan the bar code.

The scanned bar code is automatically registered.

## ● i-motion

---

About i-motion .....	XXX
Downloading i-motion .....	XXX
Setting Auto Play of i-motion .....	XXX
Setting the Type of i-motion to Be Downloaded .....	XXX



## About i-motion

i-motion is the data of videos, sounds and music. You can download i-motions to your FOMA terminal from a variety of i-motion-compatible sites to play the downloaded i-motion. You can also specify the i-motion for the standby display or ring tone.

● i-motion compatible sites can be found from the "Menu List" of iMenu.

- Downloading i-motion → p.96
- Playing i-motion → p.96
- Specifying i-motion for auto start setting → p.121
- Setting i-motion on the standby display → p.177
- Specifying i-motion for the movie ringtone setting → p.163

### Types of i-motion

i-motion is divided into two broad types, depending on sites from which i-motion is downloaded or data types.

#### ■ Normal type

FOMA terminal can save up to 300 Kbytes at maximum. There are two formats as follows: Some i-motions cannot be saved even if they are normal types.

- ① i-motions that can be played after being downloaded (up to 300 Kbytes)
- ② i-motions that can be played while download is in progress (up to 300 Kbytes)

#### ■ Streaming type

The type does not allow you to save i-motions in your FOMA terminal. i-motions can be played while the data is being downloaded (played up to 2 Mbytes). Data is downloaded for each play since the data is discarded after being played.

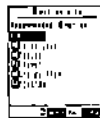
The way that streaming type i-motion data is being played during the downloading operation is called "Replay streaming".

- i-motion you can play is based on the MP4 (Mobile MP4) format.
- When you set the i-motion to the standby display, you cannot go to "Phone To function", "Mail To function" or "Web To function" from the i-motion play display.

## Downloading i-motion

### Downloading i-motion from a site and play the program

- 1 Display the i-motion-compatible site from which you want to download i-motion.



- 2 Select and download an i-motion.

When the download is completed, a screen appears notifying you of the completion of data received.

To cancel the operation

Press [ ] (Quit).

When the i-motion is Normal type

In "Automatic replay" (p.121) of "i-motion setting", you can select whether or not you want to play the i-motion automatically during the download operation. However, some i-motion may not play automatically.

When the i-motion is Streaming type

You cannot download i-motion when the "i-motion type setting" is set to "Normal type".

When the message "Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay" appears.

"i-motion type" (p.121) of "i-motion setting" is set to "Normal type". Press [ ] (Select) to return to the site screen. After selecting "i-motion type" from the function menu set to "Normal" = "Streaming type", download the i-motion again.

When the message "Replay streaming?" appears.

• Select "YES" to start playing. Select "NO" to go back to the site screen.

• When you want to stop playing the operation after selecting "YES", press [ ] (Quit).

- 3 Select "Play" on the data received screen.



The downloaded i-motion will be played.

When the message "Receive again and replay streaming?" appears:

This message appears when the i-motion is the streaming type.

Select "YES" to download the data and start playing. Select "NO" to go back to the data received screen.

#### Operation while i-motion plays

The following operations can be performed while an i-motion is playing.

Control key	i-motion's operation
[ ] (Pause)	Pause/resume play
[ ] (Volume)	Volume adjustment
[ ] (Fast Forward)	Fast forward
[ ] (Skip)	Skip (Invalid when the i-motion has no voice or sound)
Press [ ] for 1 second or more	Stop
After play is paused by pressing [ ] (Pause), press [ ] (Play)	Play frame by frame (The frame advances to the next each time it is pressed)
After play is paused by pressing [ ] (Pause), select "Slow" from the function menu	Slow
[ ] (Quit)	Stop


※ If it may be unavailable, depending on i-motions.

• Fast forwarding, per-frame play and slow motion play are not available while a normal type i-motion is replayed while the downloading is in progress (only the first replay of the i-motion). In addition, pause operation cannot be conducted in case of replaying streaming. Press [ ] (Quit) to cancel playing.

## NOTE

- When download is interrupted while it is simultaneously being played back due to radio wave condition, etc., you can still play the data that has been downloaded before the interruption occurred. The data downloading completion screen may not be displayed because the downloading was not completed. To play all parts of the data, download the data again.
- When the data is being played while it is retrieving the data, the i-moban replay may stop, or image distortion may occur due to the radio wave condition.
- Restrictions may be imposed on i-motion play. You cannot play i-motion in the following conditions:

Types of replay restriction	Conditions of restriction
Replay period (started date specified)	Before and after the replay period
Replay expiration (only end date specified)	After the replay expiration
Replay times (replay number of time)	When there is no more available replay time

- When the replay restriction applies to the i-motion,  is displayed on the left side of the title on the download completion screen.
- When you try to replay an i-motion with the replay period or replay expiration restriction, a message notifying you of such restriction appears. After the message box closes, replay starts.
- When you try to replay an i-motion with the replay times restriction, a message notifying you of that restriction appears. When the message "Play?" appears, select "YES" to start replay and "NO" to stop it.
- When you try to play an i-motion, the message "This data has the case of 2MB play?" may be displayed. If you select "Yes", it starts playing. However, the replay may be disrupted if a streaming type i-motion exceeds the maximum size. Even if you reload the i-motion, replay will stop before all the data is replayed.
- Some downloaded i-motion may not be played properly.
- Some i-motions may not be able to be downloaded.
- The URL of the screen notifies you of the completion of data received is not stored for "Last URL." (p.62) The Last URL maintains the URL for the page displayed prior to the completion of data reception.
- Some i-motions feature "Phone To function" (p.112), "Mail To function" (p.113), and/or "Web To function" (p.114) using the character information displayed in the subtitle (character information based on the i-motion is displayed during replay). Displayed phone numbers and mail addresses can be saved in the Phonebook.

## Saving i-motion

You can save i-motions in your FOMA terminal if they allow you to select "Save" on the data received screen.

- You can make a variety of operations for the stored i-motions such as playing or program editing using "i Motion" (p.308).
- You can save up to 100 i-motion data including movies shot by the camera. The number of i-motion data that can be saved changes to 5 - 100 items depending on the amount of the data.

### 1 Select "Save" on the screen that notifies you of the data received screen.



A message appears asking if it is OK to save the i-motion.

To save the i-motion

Select "YES".

A message appears notifying you that the i-motion has been saved.

To cancel the operation

Select "NO".

You go back to the data received screen without saving the i-motion.

When the memory is full

A message appears asking if you want to delete unnecessary

i-motions and then save the new i-motion.

To save the new i-motion, select "YES" and then select the i-motion that you want to delete.

To cancel saving the new i-motion, select "NO". When you select "NO", you can go back to the screen that notifies you of the data received without saving the data.

- The i-motion that you saved will appear at the top of the list in the "i Motion" folder. <No title> will appear for i-motion without titles.
- You cannot save the following i-motions.
  - i-motions that cannot be stored
  - Streaming type i-motions
  - i-motions whose replay was stopped during downloading
  - i-motions whose download did not complete correctly
  - i-motions of which replay period has expired
  - i-motions which tried to be stored continuously on the data received screen
- i-motion allows you to save the data received screen as the "Screen memo" (p.58) and play the i-motions from the screen memo. To save the i-motions, select "Screen memo" from the function menu on the data received screen. However, the following i-motion screen cannot be saved under "Screen memo":
  - i-motions that are specified for the replay restriction
  - Streaming type i-motions
  - i-motion with incomplete data
- i-motions saved under the screen memo are not listed in the list of the "i Motion" folder. Thus, some functions are not available such as the program replay or standby display.
- Some i-motions may display a link to another page after played. If you select the link, a message may appear asking whether or not you wish to save the i-motion that you have viewed. If you want to save it, follow the message to save it, and then display the linked page.


## Displaying property on i-motion

You can check the property such as the titles of i-motions, replay restrictions or file size.

### 1 Select "Property" on the data received screen.



The screen that displays data information appears. Scroll the screen with  and check the information.

After checking the information, press .


## Setting Auto Play of i-motion

Default setting **ON**

You can select whether or not to play an i-motion automatically when it is downloaded from a Web page or when a screen memo including i-motion is displayed.

- "Automatic replay" can be set only for Normal type i-motions. The program is automatically played for Streaming type i-motions regardless of the above setting.

Type of i-motion → p.95

**1** Select  ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "i-motion setting" ▶ "i-motion a-play".

**2** Select whether you want to play the i-motion automatically or not.


ON : Auto play starts after download is completed (Some i-motions are played automatically while they are being downloaded).

OFF : Auto play does not start after downloading i-motion (or during the download), and the screen appears notifying you of the completion of the download.

## Setting the Type of i-motion to Be Downloaded

Default setting **Normal type**

When you are downloading new i-motion from a site, you can set the type of i-motion.

**1** Select  ▶ "i-mode settings" ▶ "i-motion setting" ▶ "i-motion type setting".

**2** Select the type to be played.

Type of i-motion → p.95

Normal type : Downloads only Normal type i-motion.

Norm-Streaming type : Downloads both Normal type and Streaming type i-motions.

## ● Organizing Data

---

Displaying a Saved Image .....	XXX
Editing a Still Image .....	XXX
Playing a Movie Shot with the Camera or Downloaded Emotion .....	XXX
Editing a Movie .....	XXX
Chara-ton .....	XXX
Playing a Melody .....	XXX
Organizing Data .....	XXX
■ Exchanging Data with PC or Other FOMA Terminal	
Data Transfer with Infrared Exchange/Cable Connection .....	XXX
Transferring Individual Data Items .....	XXX
Transferring Data in Batch .....	XXX
Preventing Phonobook Images from Forwarding .....	XXX
■ miniSD Memory Card	
About a miniSD Memory Card .....	XXX
Copying Data in a FOMA Terminal to a miniSD Memory Card .....	XXX
Copying/Moving Data in a miniSD Memory Card to a FOMA Terminal .....	XXX
Managing miniSD Memory Card .....	XXX
Using miniSD Reader/Writer .....	XXX

## Displaying a Saved Image

Default setting    Set Image disp.: Normal

You can display animations used on the standby display and wake-up display, pictures (still images) shot with the built-in camera and downloaded images, original animations, and images that can be set to the videophone call.

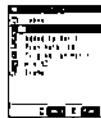
- About folder structure and file format of "Image" → p.286
- The size of an image exceeding 1816 (width) x 1212 (height) dots cannot be displayed.

<Example: To display an image in the Inbox folder>

### 1 Select (Menu) ► (Image) ► "Image".

The folder list screen of "Image" is displayed.  
When PIM lock is set, the Pre-installed folder and the Frame folder are displayed.

### 2 Select the folder that contains the image.



The image list screen appears. → p.XXX  
It may take several minutes to display the image list screen when the list includes many items or the file size is large.

To check the image information

Highlight the image that you want to check the information on the image list screen, and then select "Image info" from the function menu.  
For original animations, highlight the original animation you want to check on the folder list screen of the image viewer and select "Image info" from the function menu. In image information, you can check the file name, file size, file restrictions and where the image is attached to. The file size that can be managed in the FOMA terminal will appear in image info. For original animations, you can only check the information on where the image is attached to.  
Press (Exit) after checking the image information.

### 3 Select the image you want to display.

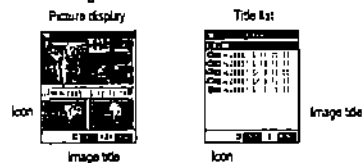


Press (Left) to display the previous or next image.  
Press (Exit) to close the display.

To change the size of screen display  
You can change the size of screen display.  
Select "Set image disp." from the function menu, and then select the display size from "Normal" or "Full display".

## How to display the image list

You can select to display the image list screen either as a title list or a picture display that consists of 4 images in one screen.



- Two icons appear before the image title. The icon on the left indicates the data format and the icon on the right indicates the data source.  
About the icon that appears before the image title → p.XXX  
About the image title → p.XXX
- You can change an image title → p.XXX
- Picture display cannot be used to view original animations.

## Switching the display layout

- If the display layout is switched, the setting is not retained. The display layout of image list screen is in accordance with "Viewer settings".

### 1 Select "Title" or "Picture" from the function menu in the image list screen.



To display the full-screen

To switch from the image list screen to the full-screen display, highlight the image and then press (Disp.).

To switch back from the full-screen display to the image list screen, press (Exit).

## Changing the setting of "Viewer settings"

Default setting    Picture

### 1 Select (Menu) ► (Image) ► "Display" ► "Viewer settings".

To set the picture display

Select "Picture".

To set the title list

Select "Title".

## Sending a still image attached to a mail

You can attach a saved still image to a mail and send it.

- If the image to be attached to mail is not appropriate, you cannot select "Compose message". You may not be able to attach some images to i-mode mail due to data size. → p.XXX
- You cannot attach images stored in the original animation folder to i-mode mail.

### 1 Display the image list screen → p.XXX

### 2 Select the image you want to attach from the image list screen and select "Compose message" from the function menu.

About composing new i-mode mail → p.XXX

While an image is being displayed, you can compose i-mode mail from the function menu

## Setting an image to the standby display <Set as display>

You can specify an image on the standby display, wake-up display, voice call display for dialing or receiving, or mail display for incoming/outgoing. You can also set an image to the videophone call display for the On hold screen, Holding screen, Camera off screen or Record message screen.

- In addition to photos (still images) taken by the built-in camera, you can also use unrestricted JPEG images downloaded from the sites for videophone call "On hold", "Holding", "Camera off" and "Record message".

### 1 Display the Image list screen. →p.294

You can switch the list screen by selecting "Picture" or "Title name" from the function menu. →p.295

### 2 Highlight the image you want to set, and select "Set as display" from the function menu.

The items that are already specified appear with "M" mark. However, the "M" mark is not displayed even you make a videophone call setting for "On hold", "Holding", "Camera off" or "Record message". You can also select "Set as display" from the Function menu after pressing  [Disp] to display the images.

### 3 Select the image you want to set.

To release the specified image, go to "Display setting" (p.177) to change the setting to other image.

#### NOTE

- You can set an image that is up to 100 KB and 640 dots wide x 480 dots high or smaller.
- Depending on the size of the downloaded image, the entire image may not be displayed on the screen you set.
- You can also use "Display setting" to set the image for "Stand-by display", "Wake-up display", "Dialing", "Calling", "Mail sending", "Mail receiving" or "Checking".
- To enable the image specified to videophone call "On hold", "Holding", "Camera off" or "Record message", select "Original" in "Select image", →p.98

#### Setting the display position (Positioning)

You can set the image display position when pasting an image that is vertically smaller than the image display area.

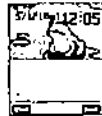
- This setting becomes invalid when the pasted image is vertically larger than the display area.
- You cannot specify a location for the images stored in "Pre-installed", "Original animation", "miniSD" and "Frame" folders, pre-defined videophone images and original videophone images.

#### Display location

<Example: Standby display>



Displayed in the center



Displayed at the top



Displayed at the bottom

### 1 Display the Image list screen. →p.294

You can switch the list screen by selecting "Picture" or "Title name" from the function menu. →p.295

### 2 Highlight the image you want to set, and then select "Positioning" from the function menu.

The image that you have trimmed will start playing. You can also select "Positioning" from the function menu after pressing  [Disp] to display the images.

### 3 Select the display position.

#### NOTE

- If an image is added, the position is automatically set to "Center". Set the displaying position as you like.
- If the set image is larger than the target area, the image is displayed according to the "Clipping area" setting.

#### Setting the clipping area (Clipping area)

You can set the clipping area when pasting an image that is vertically larger than the image display area.

- This setting becomes invalid when the pasted image is vertically smaller than the display area.
- You cannot specify clipping (display) area for images stored in "Pre-installed", "Original animation", "miniSD" and "Frame" folders, pre-defined videophone images and original videophone images.

#### Clipping (display) area

<Example: When you receive a voice call>



Displayed in the center



Displayed at the top



Displayed at the bottom

### 1 Display the Image list screen. →p.294

You can switch the list screen by selecting "Picture" or "Title name" from the function menu. →p.295

### 2 Highlight the image you want to set, and then select "Clipping area" from the function menu.

You can also select "Clipping area" from the function menu after pressing  [Disp] to display the images.

### 3 Select the clipping area.

#### NOTE

- If an image is added, the clipping area is automatically set to "Center". Set the clipping area as you like.
- If the set image is smaller than the target area, the image is displayed according to the "Positioning" setting.

### Adding an Image to the Phonebook

When you add an image to the Phonebook and select "ON" in "Display phonebook image" (p.XXX), the added image is displayed when an incoming call is received.

- You can add a JPEG image up to 100 KB except the file restriction is set to "Restricted" (p.293). Such information can be viewed in "Image Info" (p.294). Even if the file restriction is set to "Restricted", you can store in the Phonebook a still image taken with the built-in camera, a still image taken with Chara-den with "Rec. file restriction" set to "Unrestricted" and an image forwarded by the infrared exchange function or downloaded from the miniSD memory card.
- You cannot register link files for animations or continuous multiple pictures stored in "Original animation".

- 1 Display the Image list screen. →p.XXX
- 2 Highlight an image you want to add and select "Add Image to PB" from the function menu.  
You can add an image to the Phonebook by selecting "Add image to PB" from the function menu in "Inbox" or "Camera" under "Image".
- 3 Select "Phone".
- 4 Select the item you want to set.

To add an image as a new data  
Select "New" and perform the same procedure as described in "Storing an Entry in the Phonebook" (p.XXX).

To add an image as an additional data  
Select "Add" and perform the same procedure as steps 3 and 4 described in p.XXX.

### Creating an animation <Setting/Releasing original animation>

You can create an animation of up to 20 frames using added images.

- You can edit link files for continuous multiple pictures taken by the built-in camera (animation files). Release of original animation settings will not delete the images.
- You can create up to 20 link files for original animation.
- You cannot set up any pictures in the GIF format, animations or images in the pre-installed folder and a miniSD memory card.

<Example: To set a picture (still image) taken with the built-in camera>

- 1 Select the "Original animation" folder on the Folder list screen of "Image", and then select <New>.  
If the link file of the original animation is already registered, the original animation list screen appears.  
To edit the original animation set up  
Highlight the original animation to edit and select "Orig. animation" from the function menu.
- 2 Select the frame and then select the folder that contains the image.

### 3 Select the Image.



Press [Play] to display the image.  
You can switch the list screen by selecting the "Picture" or "Title name" from the function menu. →p.295

To release the set image  
Select the image you want to release on the frame list screen and then select "Release this".

### 4 Repeat the Step 2 and 3 to set the image.

### 5 When the setting is completed, press [Finish].

To release the setting of original animation  
Select a "Original animation" folder on the folder list screen of "Image", select a link file for the original animation, and select "Release animat." from the function menu.

### Image edition

#### Editing a Still Image

You can edit a picture (still image) shot with the built-in camera and image that were forwarded using Infrared exchange or downloaded from the Website.

The editable types are as follows:

Function	Processing details	Supported image size	See page
Retouch	Changes color or sharpness of still images	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high	p.297
Brightness	Adjust the brightness of images		
Frame	Sets the frame to still images		p.298
Marker stamp	Adds marks (marker stamp) on still images such as heart mark		
Character stamp	Adds input stamps to still image		p.299
Rotate	Rotates an image 90 degrees or 180 degrees	Up to 164 dots wide × 112 dots high, 176 dots wide × 96 dots high, 440 dots wide × 480 dots high	p.300
Trim away	Trims away part of an image and saves it.	Up to 352 dots wide × 288 dots high	
Composite image	Composites one image on another	Up to 640 dots wide × 480 dots high	
Size for mail	Scale down an image size to attach to mail.		p.301

\* The frame can be set only to an image of 352 dots wide × 288 dots high, 240 dots wide × 260 dots high, 176 dots wide × 44 dots high or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high

- The image quality may be reduced when you edit the image many times.
- The editing result may not be displayed effectively depending on the image.
- About editable images →p.289

### Operational flow

This section describes the operation flow for manipulating images.

- 1 Highlight the image you want to edit on the Image list screen, and then select "Edit image" from the function menu. →p.294

The selected image appears.  
You can switch the list display by selecting "Picture" or "Title name" from the function menu on the image list screen. →p.295

- 2** Select the function in which you want to edit the image from the function menu, and then follow the appropriate procedure.



- 3** Check the image you have just edited and press **[Sel]**.

To cancel, press **[Cancel]**.

- 4** Press **[Save]**.

A message appears asking whether or not to overwrite the edited image. Select "YES" to overwrite the edited image. Select "NO" to save the edited image in the folder selected in Step 1 where the image is saved. To continue editing without saving the previous edit, select an editing category.

### Adding effects

<Retouch>

- 1** Select an editing category on the retouch screen.

The retouch list screen is displayed. Available processing options are shown as follows:

Sharp	: Emphasizes the contrast in contours
Blur	: Blurs contours
Sepia	: Tinges hues in sepia
Emboss	: Displays a relief-like uneven quality to the picture
Negative	: Displays a negative of the picture
Horizontal flip	: Sets to mirror image

\*"Sepia" option of "Retouch" and "Sepia" option of "Color mode set." (p.268) result in slightly differently color.

### Adjusting the brightness of images

<Brightness>

You can adjust the brightness of images in 5 levels.

- 1** Adjust brightness on the brightness control screen.



Press **[Left]** to decrease the brightness, and press **[Right]** to increase the brightness.

The brightness can be adjusted in 5 levels, from -2 to +2.

-2	: Dark
-1	: Slightly dark
0	: Normal
+1	: Slightly light
+2	: Light

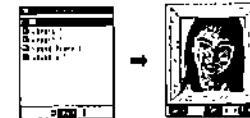
### Combining a frame to an image

<Frame>

You can set a frame to an image.

- A frame data is combined based on the selected format.
- You can download and add a frame from a site. →p.114

- 1** Select a frame on the frame selection screen.



The list screen of frame is displayed. About the list of selectable frame →p.472

### Adding a marker stamp

<Marker stamp>

You can add a stamp (marker stamp) such as a heart shaped mark, as if you put a sticker on, to an image.

- The marker stamp can be selected from among 32 designs, and the selected marker can be pasted to the desired location. You can also rotate the marker stamp or increase/decrease the size.

- 1** Press **[Marker]** to select a marker stamp on the list screen of marker stamps.



About the list of selectable marker stamps →p.472

- 2** Slide **[Neuropointer]** to determine the marker stamp position with the Neuropointer key.



You can also set the position by pressing **[Neuropointer]**.

To edit the marker stamp

Select the items you want to edit from the function menu.

90° to right	: Rotates clockwise 90 degrees.
90° to left	: Rotates counter-clockwise 90 degrees.
180°	: Rotates 180 degrees.
Scale up	: Increases to double size.
Scale down	: Decreases to half size.




## Pasting characters to an image <Character stamp>

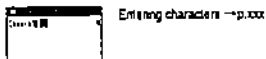
Default setting Character color : Black Font : Gothic style Character size : Standard size


You can add a character stamp to an image taken with the built-in camera.

- You can enter up to 15 full-pitch or 30 half-pitch characters in the character stamp. You can also enter the pictograph.

However, the number of characters that can be entered may vary depending on the image size.

- 1 Enter characters on the character stamp input screen and press  [Set].




- 2 Use  to move the Neuropointer key to the point you want to place the character stamp.



You can also set the position by pressing .

To edit the character stamp

Select the items you want to edit from the function menu.

Character color : Changes the character color. To select another color, press  [change] to select it.  
Font : Changes the font type.  
Character size : Changes the character size.

## Rotating an image <Rotating>

- If you rotate an image of 1616 (width) x 1212 (height) dots or 1280 (width) x 960 (height) dots in "90° to right" or "90° to left", the resolution will be reduced to 480 (width) x 640 (height) dots. Rotate in "180°" to 640 (width) x 480 (height) dots.
- The frame can be set only to a rotated image of 352 (dots wide) x 288 (dots high), 240 (dots wide) x 288 (dots high), 176 (dots wide) x 144 (dots high) or 128 (dots wide) x 96 (dots high).

- 1 Select the rotating direction on the rotation screen.

90° to right : Rotates clockwise 90 degrees.  
90° to left : Rotates counterclockwise 90 degree.  
180° : Rotates 180 degrees.

When the image is rotated in "90° to right" or "90° to left", the excessive width from the screen is not displayed.

## Trimming images <Trim away>

You can trim away a part of an image. It is useful when you want to attach an image to mail but it is too large.

- You can trim away still images of the 5 sizes 352(dots wide) x 288(dots high), 320(dots wide) x 240(dots high), 240(dots wide) x 289(dots high) for Stand-by, 176(dots wide) x 144(dots high) for Mail(L), and 128(dots wide) x 96(dots high) for Mail(S).

- 1 Select the trimming size on the trimming screen.

You cannot select the same format as the original or large format.

An image of 1616 dots wide x 1212 dots high or 1280 dots wide x 960 dots high is reduced to 640 dots wide x 480 dots high.

- 2 Press  to select the trimming area and then press  [Set].





You can select the trimming area using the Neuropointer key by sliding .

## Combining Images <Composite image>

You can compose a single image by selecting 4 images stored in the "Image".

- Four images used for composition are not deleted through this operation.

- 1 Select "Composite image" from the Image list screen.
- 2 Select the location and the image to compose.  
To cancel set image  
Select the image to cancel and select "Release this".
- 3 Repeat Step 2 to set 4 images and press  [Finish].  
The composed image is displayed.  
You cannot save the image when you do not set 4 images.
- 4 Check the image and press  [Save].

The created composite image will be saved in the folder selected in "Composite image" in the function menu in Step 1.

To cancel image composition  
Press  [Cancel].

## Changing the image size <Size for mail>

You can change the size of a JPEG image to be attached to mail.

- You cannot change the size of a JPEG image of 9000 bytes or smaller.

- 1 Select "Size for mail" from the function menu on the Image list screen and select items.

Mail size (large) : Scale down the size of an image exceeding 640 (Width) x 480 (Height) dots to 640 x 480 dots and changes the size of a file to 100K bytes or smaller.

You cannot select Mail size (large) for an image of 100K bytes or smaller.

Mail size (small) : Scale down the size of an image exceeding 176 x 144 dots to 176 x 144 dots and changes the size of a file to 9000 bytes or smaller.

## Playing a Movie Shot with the Camera or Downloaded i-motion

Default setting    Actual size

You can play a movie shot with the built-in camera and i-motion downloaded from a site or Web page.

Downloading i-motion in the FOMA terminal → p.56

- You can play the data, which is created in "Picture voice" (p.258).
- You can clip the playing video as a still image or movie or set i-motion to the standby display.
- You can edit titles and view information on movies and i-motion.
- Folder structure and file format of "i Motion" → p.286

<Example: To play i-motion in the Inbox>

### 1 Select (Menu) ►►► "i Motion".

The Folder list screen of "i Motion" is displayed.  
When "Playlist" is selected, you can play up to 10 i-motions based on the playlist. → p.311

### 2 Select the folder that contains movies or i-motions.

About the icons before the title → p.288  
To check the information about movies and i-motions  
Highlight the movie or i-motion that you want to check the information on the list screen, and then select "i-motion info" from the function menu.  
i-motion information enables checking of the information of the i-motion title, file name, file size, file restrictions and replay restrictions.  
After checking the Chara-den information, press **OK**.

### 3 Select the movie or i-motion that you want to play.

The movie or i-motion starts playing.  
The movie or i-motion is played in the volume selected in "Phone V/Phone" or "Ring volume". If the volume is set to "Silent" or "Step", it plays in "Level 2".

## Operations when i Motion is On

The following operations can be performed while the "i Motion" is playing.



Control key	Operations of "i Motion"
	Pause/resume play
	Volume adjustment
	Play the previous/movie or i-motion
	Fast forward
	Mute (invalid when the i-motion had no voice or sound)
Hold down  for 1 second or more	Stop backward*
Hold down  for 1 second or more	Stop forward*
After play is paused by pressing  press	Play frame by frame (the frame advanced to the next each time it is pressed)
After play is paused by pressing , select "Slow" from the function menu	Slow
	Exit

\* It may be unavailable depending on i-motion

**To set ring tone**

On the screen listing movies or i-motion, highlight a movie or i-motion and select "Set as ring tone".  
Choose setup items. The items that have already selected are marked with "ok".  
To cancel the ring tone you have selected and replace it with another melody, movie or i-motion, use "Select ring tone" (p.163).

Movies and i-motion can be used as ring tone only for voice calls and video phones.  
To add a movie to the Phonebook

When you add a movie or i-motion to the Phonebook and select "OK" in "Display phonebook image" (p.181), the added movie or i-motion is displayed when an incoming call is received.  
Select "Add i-motion to phonebook" from the function menu on the list screen of the user creation folder, "inbox" of "i Motion" or "Camera". After selecting "Phone", select "New" for new registration and register using the same operations as those of "Storing an Entry in the Phonebook" (p.128). Select "Add" for additional registration and register using the same operations as Steps 3 and 4 of p.114.  
\* You can add a movie or i-motion of up to 100 KB. However, you cannot add an i-motion downloaded from a site or a movie recorded with Chara-den when "Rec. the restriction" is set to "Restricted".  
To use Phone To function, Mail To function, Web To function  
When the underlined phone number, mail address, or URL is displayed on the screen after the movie or i-motion is played, "Phone To function", "Mail To function" and "Web To function" (p.112, p.113 and p.114) are available.  
When you can use "Phone To function" and "Mail To function", you can add the data to the Phonebook.  
After the playback, select "Add to phonebook" from the function menu. Select "New" and follow the same procedure as "Storing an Entry in the Phonebook" (p.108). To add same movie or i-motions, select "Add" and follow the procedure in the Step 3-4 (p.114)

Phone To function

Mail To function

Web To function

- NOTE**
- When you fold the FOMA terminal during playing, "i Motion" stops and you go back to the folder list screen.
  - Even if you adjust the volume during playing, when the Melody player ends, the volume returns to the setting specified in "Ring volume".
  - When changing the size of replay display of movie or i-motion, select "Set image disp." from the function menu and then select the display size from "Actual size" or "Fit in display".

## How to see the movie list screen

You can switch the layout of "inbox", "Camera", User-composed folders or "miniSD" list screen of "i Motion" to the display that consists of 5-line titles or the preview display. The preview shows the first frame of the movie or i-motion.



- The preview screen is not displayed for i-motion without images.
- Two icons appear before the movie title on the list screen of each folder. An icon on the left indicates data format and the other on the right indicates the data source.  
About icons before a title → p.XXX  
About title → p.XXX
- You can change a movie title. → p.XXX

## Switching the display

- 1 Select "Listing" from the function menu in the movie list screen.
- 2 Select "Listing" from the function menu in the movie list screen.  
To display the preview screen  
Select "Title + image".  
To display the title list  
Select "Title".

## To edit sound effect to I-motion playback sound <SRS\_WOW setting>

Default setting  ON

- 1 Select (Menu) ► "Incoming call" ► "SRS\_WOW setting" and then "ON".

When you play an I-motion that indicates before the title on the list screen, you can hear the edited sound like "crisp and distortion-free sound of instruments and voices" from the speakers and "natural stereophonic sound", "rich bass sound" and/or "crisp and distortion-free sound of instruments and voices" from the earphones.

- If you try to play a movie or I-motion when the Manner mode is set, a message appears asking if it is OK to play the Movie player. Select "YES" to play with voice, or select "NO" to play image only. On an I-motion that has neither images nor bicker, you go back to the list screen.
- I-motion may be restricted as follows. If restriction is active, you cannot play the I-motion:
  - Replay period: Before and after the replay period
  - Replay expiration: After the replay expiration
  - Replay times: When the repayable times are over
- When you try to play an I-motion with a replay period restriction or replay expiration, a message appears notifying you of the restriction. Replay starts once the message disappears.
- When you try to play an I-motion with a replay times restriction, a message notifying you of the restriction appears. Select "YES" to play the I-motion and "No" to stop it.
- If you try to play I-motion with restriction(s), a message appears to ask you whether or not you want to delete the I-motion. Select "YES" to delete the I-motion. If you select "NO", the I-motion will not be deleted.
- If you have left the battery pack removed for a long time, the date and time in the FOMA terminal may be reset. In this case, I-motion with the specified relay period or replay expiration cannot be played.
- When you attach a movie shot with the built-in camera, the file restriction (p.293) may be set to disable/enable the data being further sent or output from the terminal. You can view the information about relay period and file restriction in "I-motion info" (p.308).
- is not displayed when the voice and music are not contained. Instead, "g" is displayed beside the play time on the replay display.
- In case that you receive an incoming voice/video phone call while the movie or I-motion is played, the playback is cancelled.
- In case that you receive a mail or Msg. Request/Free while the movie or I-motion is played, the images or voices may be distorted.
- Movies shot with a terminal other than FOMA N900G may not be played normally.

## Playing movies in the order you like <Playing program>

You can play up to 10 favorite movies or I-motions based on the playlist.

<Example: To program and play an I-motion in the Inbox folder>

- 1 Highlight "Playlist" on the folder list screen of "I Motion", and select "Edit playlist" from the function menu. → p.308
- 2 Select the program number you want to set.
- 3 Select the folder and then select the movie or I-motion you want to include on the playlist.
- 4 Repeat the Step 2 and 3 and then press [Finish].



To release the movie or I-motion from the playlist  
Select the movie or I-motion you want to release and then select "Release this".

- 5 Press [Play] to play the movie or I-motion from the playlist.

The movie or I-motion starts playing.  
The edited playlist is not released even if M-Mode is turned off.

To release the playlist

Highlight "Playlist" on the folder list screen in "I Motion", and select "Release playlist" from the function menu.

## NOTE

- While a movie or I-motion is played from the playlist, "Phone To function", "Mail To function", "Web To function" (p.112, p.113 and p.114) are not available.

## You can set a movie or I-motion to the standby display

- When you set a movie or I-motion to the standby display, the first frame of the movie or I-motion is displayed on the standby display.

<Example: To set an I-motion in the "Inbox">

- 1 Display the list screen of movies or I-motions. → p.308
- 2 Highlight the movie or I-motion you want to set, and then select "Set as stand-by" from the function menu.
- 3 Select "YES".  
To release the set movie or I-motion, go to "Display setting" (p.177) to change the setting to other image.

- You cannot set a movie or i-motion with voice only, an i-motion with text only, and an i-motion restricted with replay period as a standby display.
- A movie or i-motion specified to the standby display is played when you open the FOMA terminal. In this case, the only function available is volume adjustment. During the Manner mode, the image is displayed. "Phone To function", "Mail To function" and "Web To function" (p.112, p.113 and p.114) are not available.

### Sending a movie attached to a mail

- You may not be able to attach some movies or i-motions to an i-mode mail depending on the amount of data. → p.162

- 1 Display the list screen of movies or i-motions. → p.XXX
- 2 Highlight on the list screen the movie or i-motion you want to send using i-mode mail and select "Compose message" from the function menu.  
You cannot select "Compose message" when the movie or i-motion cannot be attached to an i-mode mail. You can compose an i-mode mail from the function menu when a movie is played.
- 3 Compose an i-mode mail.  
Composing an i-mode mail → p.XXX



The editable types are as follows:

Function	Editing content	See page
Trim for image	Trim one frame from a movie shot with the built-in camera as a picture	p.313
Trim i-motion	Trim the part of movie shot with the built-in camera	p.315
Trim for mail	Trim a movie shot with the built-in camera to the size that can be attached to a mail	p.316
Edit scene	Adds or modifies a scene in a movie or i-motion	p.317
Record sound	Recording new voice in a movie or i-motion	p.319

- The multi task function cannot be used while editing a movie.
- About editable movies → p.289

- 1 Highlight the movie you want to edit on the list screen, and then select "Edit i-motion". → p.308
- 2 Select the item you want to edit from the function menu and then follow the appropriate procedure. → See above table

### Trimming and saving one frame <Trim for Image>

You can trim and save a picture taken with the built-in camera by pausing a movie that is playing, fast forwarding, slow playing.

- The trimmed pictures are stored in the folder of "Image" selected at the time of saving. You can display or edit the saved pictures in "Image". → p.294 and p.296

- 1 Select "Trim for Image" from the function menu.  
When you want to trim the first frame of the movie, go to the Step 4.
- 2 Press [Play] and [Stop] at the screen to be trimmed to stop the movie.  
The movie starts playing.  
You can also pause the movie by pressing [Stop] during fast forwarding or slow playing.  
After pressing the pause, press [Next] to advance the movie to the next by frame.
- 3 Press [Set] and then select "YES".  
The selected frame is trimmed as a picture.
- 4 Press [Save] and then folder to save.

### Trimming the part from a movie <Trim i-motion>

You can trim and save your favorite part from a movie shot with the built-in camera. You can also select "Picture voice" (p.258) to trim and save the part.

- 1 Select "Trim i-motion" from the function menu.  
To trim the part from the middle of the movie  
Press [Play] to play the movie until the starting scene to be trimmed and then press [Stop].  
Press [Next] one or more seconds, to fast forward.
- 2 Press [Start] to start trimming.  
The movie starts playing and the trimming operation starts.  
Press [Next] one or more seconds, to fast forward.
- 3 When you see the last scene to be trimmed, press [Stop] and then [End].  
The movie that you have trimmed will start playing.  
You can stop playing by pressing [Stop] even during fast forward or slow motion.  
After you stop playing, you can forward frame-by-frame by pressing [Next].  
To cancel, press [Exit].

#### 4 Press **[Set]**.

To check trimmed movie  
Press **[Play]**.

#### 5 Press **[Save]** and select "YES".

The trimmed movie is saved to the folder you selected in Step 1 on p.313.

### ● Trimming the part of the movie to the size for a mail <Trlm for mail> ●

You can trim the part of the movie shot with the built-in camera to make an attachable size to a mail.

#### 1 Select "Trim for mail" from the function menu.

To trim the part from the middle of the movie  
Press **[Play]** to play the movie until the starting scene to be trimmed and then press **[Stop]**.  
Press **[1s]** one or more seconds, to fast forward.

#### 2 Press **[Start]** to start trimming.



The movie starts playing and the trimming operation starts.  
When the movie is trimmed to the maximum attachable size for a mail, the playback stops automatically.

#### 3 Press **[Set]**.

To check trimmed movie  
Press **[Play]**.

#### 4 Press **[Save]** and select "YES".

The trimmed movie is saved to the folder you selected in Step 1 on p.313.

### ● Editing a ticker of movie <Edit ticker> ●

Default setting	Font color: Black, Background color: White, Font size: Standard Word alignment: Left, Blink/Underline/Scroll: OFF
-----------------	--

You can add and edit a ticker in a movie or i-motion.

- You can edit 5 tickers each for a movie. Each ticker can contain 20 full-pitch characters.

<Example: To create a new ticker>

#### 1 Select "Edit ticker" from the function menu and then select "New".

To edit a ticker from the middle of the movie or i-motion  
Press **[Play]** to play the movie or i-motion until the scene from which you want to start editing the ticker and then press **[Stop]**.

To edit a movie or i-motion that has already have a ticker  
A message appears notifying you that the existing ticker information may be deleted. Select "YES" to edit the ticker. Select "Edit" and then select the ticker you want to edit.

To add a ticker  
Select "Edit ticker" from the function menu and select "Edit". Then select "Add ticker" from the function menu.  
Select "Available" to add a ticker.  
When some other tickers are already stored, "Available" is displayed in the several places where you can add a ticker. Select the place where you want to add the ticker.

#### 2 Press **[Start]** to enter the ticker and then press **[Set]**.



You can also set the starting position of ticker by selecting "Ticker start PNT" instead of pressing **[Start]**.  
Entering characters — p.322

#### 3 Select the items and edit the ticker.

How to enter characters — p.298

To change the character or background color  
Select "Color of characters" or "Background color" and select the color you want to change.  
To select other colors, press **[Change]** to select a color.

To change the font size  
Select "Font size", and then select the font size from "Normal" or "Large".

To change the character position  
Select "Word alignment", and then select the character position from "Left", "Center" or "Right".

To blink the ticker  
Select "Blink", and then select "ON".

To underline the ticker  
Select "Underline", and then select "ON".

To set the scroll method  
Select "Scroll", and select the type of scroll from "OFF", "Scroll in", "Scroll out" or "Scroll in & out", and then select the direction that the ticker is scrolled from "Right to left", "Left to right", "Bottom to top" or "Top to bottom".

#### 4 When the editing is completed, select "Finish setting".

#### 5 Press **[Play]** to play the part that the ticker is displayed.



When you are playing the part where the new ticker is displayed and see the starting position of the existing ticker, a message appears asking if you want to end the ticker display on that position. Select "YES" to add a new ticker. Select "NO" to go back to the ticker list screen.